**Spokeies**

Table of Contents

[1. Basic Grammar 4](#_Toc17112256)

[**1.1** What is COMMUNICATION? How Do We Communicate? 4](#_Toc17112257)

[**1.2** What is Language? 5](#_Toc17112258)

[**1.3** About ENGLISH, History of English? 5](#_Toc17112259)

[**1.4** Importance of the English Language in Today's World 5](#_Toc17112260)

[**1.5** Alphabets, Words, Sentences 5](#_Toc17112261)

[**1.6** Vowels and Consonants 6](#_Toc17112262)

[**1.7** Spelling Making & Pronunciation 6](#_Toc17112263)

[**1.8** Punctuation 7](#_Toc17112264)

[**1.9** Parts of speech 10](#_Toc17112265)

[1.9.1 Noun 11](#_Toc17112266)

[1.9.2 Pronoun 13](#_Toc17112267)

[1.9.3 Verb 16](#_Toc17112268)

[1.9.4 Adjectives 33](#_Toc17112269)

[1.9.5 Adverb 40](#_Toc17112270)

[1.9.6 Preposition 44](#_Toc17112271)

[1.9.7 Conjunctions 51](#_Toc17112272)

[1.9.8 Interjections 53](#_Toc17112273)

[**1.10** Determiners -> Definite article (The)-> 55](#_Toc17112274)

[indefinite articles (a, an)Singular And Plural 55](#_Toc17112275)

[**1.11** Quantifiers 55](#_Toc17112276)

[**1.12** Genders 55](#_Toc17112277)

[**1.13** Number 55](#_Toc17112278)

[**1.14** Rules Of Adding ‘s/es’ 56](#_Toc17112279)

[**1.15** Rules Of Adding ‘ing’ 58](#_Toc17112280)

[**1.16** Verb Forms (Present, Past, Past Perfect) 58](#_Toc17112281)

[**1.17** Degree of comparison 58](#_Toc17112282)

[**1.18** Prefix and Suffix 58](#_Toc17112283)

[**1.19** Synonyms and Antonyms 58](#_Toc17112284)

[**1.20** Sentence Making 59](#_Toc17112285)

[**1.21** Vocabulary 61](#_Toc17112286)

[1.21.1 Vegetable 61](#_Toc17112287)

[1.21.2 Fruits 61](#_Toc17112288)

[1.21.3 Daily Word 61](#_Toc17112289)

[1.21.4 Horoscope 61](#_Toc17112290)

[1.21.5 Antonyms 61](#_Toc17112291)

[1.21.6 Synonyms 61](#_Toc17112292)

[1.21.7 Homophones 61](#_Toc17112293)

[**1.22** This That These Those 61](#_Toc17112294)

[**1.23** What When where … 61](#_Toc17112295)

[**1.24** Verb to be 62](#_Toc17112296)

[1.24.1 Uses Of Is 63](#_Toc17112297)

[1.24.2 Uses Or Are 64](#_Toc17112298)

[1.24.3 Uses Or Am 65](#_Toc17112299)

[1.24.4 Use of was 65](#_Toc17112300)

[1.24.5 Use of were 66](#_Toc17112301)

[1.24.6 Uses Of Being 67](#_Toc17112302)

[1.24.7 Uses Of Been 67](#_Toc17112303)

[1.24.8 Be 68](#_Toc17112304)

[**1.25** Basic English Speaking 70](#_Toc17112305)

[2. Advance Grammer 71](#_Toc17112306)

[**2.1** Tenses 71](#_Toc17112307)

[2.1.1 Simple Present Tense. 71](#_Toc17112308)

[2.1.2 Present Continuous Tense. 76](#_Toc17112309)

[2.1.3 Present Perfect Tense. 80](#_Toc17112310)

[2.1.4 Present Perfect Continuous Tense. 85](#_Toc17112311)

[2.1.5 Simple Past Tense. 90](#_Toc17112312)

[2.1.6 Past Continuous Tense. 94](#_Toc17112313)

[2.1.7 Past Perfect Tense. 99](#_Toc17112314)

[2.1.8 Past Perfect Continuous Tense. 104](#_Toc17112315)

[2.1.9 Simple Future Tense. 109](#_Toc17112316)

[2.1.10 Future Continuous Tense 114](#_Toc17112317)

[2.1.11 Future Perfect Tense 119](#_Toc17112318)

[2.1.12 Future Perfect Progressive Tense/Time. 124](#_Toc17112319)

[**2.2** Modal Verbs 129](#_Toc17112320)

[2.2.1 Uses Of Can 131](#_Toc17112321)

[2.2.2 Uses Of Could 132](#_Toc17112322)

[2.2.3 Uses Of May 136](#_Toc17112323)

[2.2.4 Uses Of Might 138](#_Toc17112324)

[2.2.5 Uses Of Will 140](#_Toc17112325)

[2.2.6 Uses Of Would 141](#_Toc17112326)

[2.2.7 Uses Of Shall 146](#_Toc17112327)

[2.2.7 Uses Of Should 147](#_Toc17112328)

[2.2.9 Uses of Must 151](#_Toc17112329)

[Uses of Ought To 152](#_Toc17112330)

[2.2.8 Uses of Had Better 154](#_Toc17112331)

[2.2.9 Uses of Need 154](#_Toc17112332)

[2.2.10 Uses of Dare 155](#_Toc17112333)

[**2.3** Passive voice 160](#_Toc17112334)

[**2.4** Conditional Sentences .. pn 292 160](#_Toc17112335)

[**2.5** Complex Sentences (Chapter 24- Page 295) 160](#_Toc17112336)

[2.5.1 Noun Clause 160](#_Toc17112337)

[2.5.2 Adjective Clause 160](#_Toc17112338)

[2.5.3 Adverb Clause 160](#_Toc17112339)

[**2.6** Compound Sentences (Either or/ Neither Nor/ Otherwise/Not only/but also/as well as) 160](#_Toc17112340)

[**2.7** Direct and indirect speech 160](#_Toc17112341)

[**2.8** There It 160](#_Toc17112342)

[**2.9** Let/Let’s go / Do this 160](#_Toc17112343)

[**2.10** Causative Verbs (Get & Make) 161](#_Toc17112344)

[**2.11** Use to / Used to 161](#_Toc17112345)

[**2.12** Have to/Had to 161](#_Toc17112346)

[**2.13** Use of about to 161](#_Toc17112347)

[**2.14** Fond of /Like /Love to do /Suppose to 161](#_Toc17112348)

[**2.15** Use of Ever / Never 161](#_Toc17112349)

[**2.16** Use of Dare and need 161](#_Toc17112350)

[**2.17** Use of Getting/Get it done 161](#_Toc17112351)

[**2.18** Should have/ Could have/Would have/May have/Must have/might have 162](#_Toc17112352)

[**2.19** Add from pn 186 onwards from Grammer Book no 1 162](#_Toc17112353)

[**2.20** If conditional sentences- blog wala 162](#_Toc17112354)

[**2.21** Special use of Interrogative Words 162](#_Toc17112355)

[**2.22** Idioms and Phrases 162](#_Toc17112356)

[3. Daily Conversation 162](#_Toc17112357)

[4. Conversation & Group Discussion/Debate 162](#_Toc17112358)

[5. Presentation -> Hesitation Removal 163](#_Toc17112359)

[6. Audio Video Listing 163](#_Toc17112360)

[7. News Paper and Magazines reading & understanding 163](#_Toc17112361)

[8. Email/Letter/Application & Essay Writing 163](#_Toc17112362)

[9. Accent neutralization & making 163](#_Toc17112363)

[10. Public Speaking Skills 163](#_Toc17112364)

[11. Personality Development & Confidence Building 163](#_Toc17112365)

[12. Interview Skill & Preparations -> Mock Interviews 163](#_Toc17112366)

[13. Important Abbreviations 163](#_Toc17112367)

Basic Grammar

## What is COMMUNICATION? How Do We Communicate?

Communication is the way by which we share or exchange information, ideas or our feelings with other people or group of people. **For Example**:

* **You are pretty.**
* **I am smart.**
* **Vishal is good at English.**
* **Types of Communication**

There are two types of Communication

1. **Verbal Communication:** The sharing of information between individuals. It can also be described as the use of sounds and words to express yourself, especially in contrast to using gestures or mannerisms. Verbal Communication is again classified into four categories which include.
2. **Interpersonal Communication:** This form of communication is extremely private and restricted to ourselves.
3. **Intrapersonal Communication:** This form of communication takes place between two individuals and is thus a one-on-one conversation.
4. **Small-Group Communication:** Refers to interactions among three or more people who are connected through a common purpose, mutual influence, and a shared identity.
5. **Public Communication:** Public communication happens when individuals and groups engage in dialogue in the public sphere in order to deliver a message to a specific audience. Public speaking events, newspaper editorials and billboard advertisements are a few forms of public communication.
6. **Non-Verbal Communication:** Behavior and elements of speech aside from the words themselves that transmit meaning. Non-verbal communication includes pitch, speed, tone and volume of voice, gestures and facial expressions, body posture, stance, and proximity to the listener, eye movements and contact, and dress and appearance.

**Example of Non-Verbal communication** of this type includefacial expressions, gestures, and eye contact.

* **How do we exchange them?**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Verbal Communication** | | **Non Verbal Communication** |
| **Spoken** | **Written** | **Facial Expression** |
| Pronunciation | Alphabet formation | Gestures |
| Phonetic | Spelling | Drawing |
| Intonation | Punctuation | Painting |

## What is Language?

Language allows people to communicate with each other i.e. it is a mean of communication.

We have around 6,500 spoken languages in the world today. Whereas in India itself we have around 122 major languages and 1599 other languages like Hindi, English, Urdu, Bengali, Marathi, Telugu, Tamil, Gujarati, Kannada, etc.

## About ENGLISH, History of English?

English was originated in Britain somewhere in the mid 5th to 7th centuries. It is a West Germanic language that originated from Anglo-Frisian dialects brought to Britain by Anglo-Saxon settlers. The Anglo-Saxon who came from what is now northwest Germany, west Denmark, and the Netherlands their language was called "Englisc" from which the word "England" and "English" were originated. There are around 171,476 words in the English language. A good speaker knows about 10,000 to 15,000 words.

To speak in everyday situations a person needs a vocabulary of 1500 – 2000 words.

It takes around 250-300 words to understand 50% of spoken English, 500 words to understand 65% and 1000-1500 words to understand 95%.[estimated figure only]

## Importance of the English Language in Today's World

English is the language of international business and banking. It is the most commonly spoken foreign language and will help you to communicate with people from countries all over the world.

It is import to learn for:

* **Education**
* **Science and Technology, Innovation and research**
* **Business**
* **Traveling**
* **Better job opportunity and many more**

## Alphabets, Words, Sentences

There are 26 **alphabets** in the English Language. They are **A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z.**

Alphabets are the building block of **words**. When we arrange Alphabets with a definite meaning it is a word.**For Example**

**B - Alphabet**

**B + O + O + K = BOOK [Word]**

**O - Alphabet**

**O - Alphabet**

**K - Alphabet**

Just as the Alphabets are the building blocks of words, same way words are the building blocks of **sentences**. When we arrange words in a definite order to get a definite meaning, we call it a Sentence. **For Example**:

**It - Word**

**It + is + a + book = It is a book. [Sentence]**

**Is - Word**

**A - Word**

**Book - Word**

## Vowels and Consonants

Alphabets can be classified into Vowels and Consonants. Out of 26 Alphabets, there are five vowels and 21 consonants in English.

**Vowels are: A, E, I, O, U**

**Consonants are: B, C, D, F, G, H, J,**

**K, L, M, N, P, Q, R,**

**S, T, V, W, X, Y,**

**Vowels and consonants are sounds.**

A vowel is a speech sound made by allowing the breath to flow out of the mouth, without closing any part of the mouth or throat.

A consonant is a speech sound made by partially or completely blocking the flow of air through the mouth (using the lips, teeth, tongue, and palate).

## Spelling Making & Pronunciation

|  |
| --- |
| A    B    C    D    E   F    G    H    I     J    K    L    M    N  ए    बी    सी    डी   ई    ऐफ   जी   एच   आइ  जे   के   ऐल   ऐम   ऐन  OP    Q    R    S    T    U    V    W   X     Y    Z  ओपी   क्यू   आर  एस  टी   यू    वी    डब्ल्यू ऐक्स   वाय   ज़ैड |

|  |
| --- |
| स्वर**(Hindi Vowels)** अ    आ   इ    ई    उ    ऊ    ए    ऐ     ओ    औ   अं    अ:  a    aa   e/i    ee   u/o   oo/u e/ai  ai     o     au/ou ang  ah |

|  |
| --- |
| व्यंजन**(Hindi Consonants)** क   ख   ग    घ   ड़    च   छ    ज    झ    ण  ट    ठ    ड ढ    ण  ka    kh   ga   gha  nga  cha  chha ja   jha   yan ta    tha   da    dha      ana  त   थ   द  ढ  न    प    फ    ब    भ    म    य    र   ल  th/t   th/tha  da/th    dha  na   pa    pha/fa   ba   bha  ma   ya   ra    la  व    षश    स    ह     क्ष    त्र     ज्ञ  va/wa    sh sh   sa   ha   ksh  tra   gya |

## Punctuation

Punctuation is used to create sense, clarity and stress in sentences. You use punctuation marks to structure and organize your writing.

* **Importance of Punctuation in English Writing**

The **Example** of 'how punctuation plays a major role in writing and reading English' is :

Let’s have a sentence

**A woman without her man is nothing.**

Now see the difference after adding punctuation, it makes:

**A woman, without her man, is nothing.**

**A woman: without her, man is nothing.**

See how punctuation has made the same sentence mean two exactly opposite meaning.

Other beautiful **Example:**

**I collect silver, paper, hats and chairs.**

**I collect silver paper, hats and chairs.**

**I collect silver, paper hats and chairs.**

**The criminal, says the judge, should be hanged.**

**The criminal says, the judge should be hanged.**

**Always remember:** The first letter of the word of a sentence has to be a capital letter.

A sentence always ends with a full stop (.), a question mark (?) or an exclamation (!)

* **Punctuation Mark List :**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Full stop (period) | . |

Indicate the end of the Sentence. It is also used to show a full pause in the sentence.

**For Example:My name is Jitendra Singh. This book is written by me.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Comma | , |

Commas are used to separate a list of similar words. It is also used to show a small

pause in the sentence.

**For Example:I had milk, bread, honey and butter in breakfast.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Question mark | ? |

Question marks are used to make clear that what is said or written is a question.

**For Example: What is your name? Who has written this book?**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| exclamation mark | ! |

It shows the sentence has drama, **for Example**, surprise, anger, annoyance.

**For Example: Wow! your dress is so nice.**

**Congratulation! keep up your good work.**

**Wow! India won the T-20 series from West Indies**.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Colon | : |

A colon is used in sentences to show that something is following after colon like an **Example**, list or some quotation.

**For Example:My boss said: "Work hard. Play harder."**

**Our Prime minister Modi says: “Beti Bachao, Beti Padhio”**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Semi-colon | ; |

a semi-colon is used to join two independent clauses or two complete thoughts that could stand alone as complete sentences.

**For Example: It was rain in the match; we lost the game.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Double quotation marks | “” |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Single quotation marks | ‘’ |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Hyphen/dash | - |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| apostrophe | ’ |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| asterisk | \* |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| parentheses (or round brackets) | () |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| square brackets (or box brackets) | [ ] |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| curly brackets | {} |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| and (also called ‘ampersand’) | & |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| copyright | © |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| P**unctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| At the rate | @ |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Punctuation Mark** | **Symbol** |
| Forward slash or backward slash | / or \ |

## Parts of speech

Words constitute sentences. Based on the usage of words we can divide them into 8 different parts. These 8 different parts of the sentences are called part of speech. I.e. parts of speech explain how a word is used in a sentence.

Though an individual word can function as more than one part of speech when used in different circumstances.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Noun** | **Adjective** | **Verb** |
| A **noun** is the name of a person, place or thing.  Person Place Thing  Girl School Pencil  Boy Home Jacket  Teacher Store Dog | An **adjective**describes a noun or pronoun. An adjective tells what kind, How many or Which one.  What How Which  Kind Many One  Happy More This  Brave Two That | A **verb** shows an action or state of being. A verb shows what someone or something is doing.  Action State of being  Run, Jump Am, Is  Sit, Ask Are, Was  Think, Talk Where |
| Pronoun | Article | Adverb |
| A **pronoun** is used in place of a noun or noun phrase to avoid repetition  I She It They  You He We Me | An **article** is used before a noun. These are divided into definite (the) and indefinite (a, an). Articles help define nouns  A an the  A dog An Ant The Boy  A Rabbit An Apple The Bird | An **adverb**describes/modifies a verb, an adjective or another adverb. It tells how, where, when, how often or to what extent  **How When**  Quick Today  **Where To What Degree**  Outside Barely |
| Preposition | Conjunction | Interjection |
| A **preposition** shows the relationship of a noun or pronoun to another word. They can indicate time, place, or relationship.  From To Until  Over With After | A **conjunction** joins two words, ideas, phrases or clauses together in a sentence and shows how they are connected.  And But Or Nor | An **interjection** is a word or phrase that expresses a strong feeling or emotion. It is a short exclamation.  Help! Oh! Ouch!  Ugh! Whew!Oh!  Wow! Look Out! Oh Dear! |

### Noun

A noun is the name of a person, place, thing,animal,idea and feelings.

**For Example: Vishal, Nikunj, Anand, Pooja, Gaurav, Kanishk, Agra, Delhi, Book, Table, Cat, Dog, Devotion, Happiness, Sadness, Wisdom, HonestyEtc.**

Use of noun in sentences:

* **Myname is Gaurav.**
* **My cousin’s name is Rakesh.**
* **I have seen Agra.**
* **Delhi is an old city.**
* **This is a book.**
* **It is my village.**
* **He is known for his wisdom.**
* **I love honesty**.

* **Easy way to find Noun from Sentences:**

First, identify the verb from a sentence and the add questions (What,WhenWho,Where, etc.)to verb to find out a subject from the sentence.

**For Example: Kanishk eats mango.**

Here 'eats' is a verb in the sentence.Now to identify nouns from the sentence add questions to verb(eats).

Like**Who eats ?? answer is Kanishk so Kanishk is a noun.**

**What eats ?? answer is mango so mango is also a noun.**

**Gaurav is learning English from Spokeies**.

In this sentence 'learning' is a verb.Now to identify nouns from the sentence add questions to verb(learning).

Like **Who is 'learning' ?? answer is Gaurav so Gaurav is a noun.**

**What is 'learning' ?? answer is English so English is also a noun.**

**Where is ‘learning’?? answer is Spokeies so Spokeies is also a noun.**

**Rakesh will burn crackers on Diwali.**

In this sentence 'burn' is a verb.Now to identify nouns from the sentence add questions to verb(burn).

Like **Who will 'burn' ?? answer is Rakesh so Rakesh is a noun.**

**What will 'burn' ?? answer is crackers so crackers is also a noun.**

**When will 'burn' ?? answer is Diwali so Diwali is also a noun.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Noun Type** | **Definition** | **Example** |
| Common Nouns | A Common noun is a noun that refers to people or things in common or general. | Man, Mountain, State, Ocean, Country, Building, Airline |
| Proper Nouns | A Proper noun is a name that identifies a particular person, place or thing. | Kanishk, Himalaya, Uttar Pradesh, Delhi, Atlantic Ocean, Pacific Ocean, Australia, India |
| Abstract Nouns | An abstract noun is the nouns which don’t exist physically and that can’t be seen and touched. | Love, Wealth, Happiness, Pride, Fear, Belief, Friendship |
| Concrete Nouns | A concrete noun is the nouns which we can see and touch physically. | House, Book, Bird, Banana, Clock, Cooker, Chair, Apple |
| Countable Nouns | A countable noun is the nouns which can be counted and can be available in singular or plural form. | Bag, Ball, Cat, Egg, Train, Country, Book, Phone |
| Uncountable Nouns | The uncountable noun refers to things that normally can't be counted. | Milk, Snow, Rain, Water, Music, Aggression, Advice, Fuel |
| Compound Nouns | When two or more nouns together form a single noun called Compound noun. | Tablecloth, Eyeglasses, Sunlight, Snowflake, Sister-in-law, Mother-in-law |
| Collective Nouns | A collective noun refers to groups of people or thing. | Bunch, Audience, Flock, Team, Group, Village, Herd (of cattle, of buffalo, of antelope,of moose),School (of fish),Gaggle (of geese),Colony (of bats, of ants),Litter (of kittens, of puppies), Swarm (of bees), Pack (of wolves, of coyotes), Bed (of oysters), Army (of ants), Flock (of birds, of sheep) |

### Pronoun

A pronoun is a word which is used in place of a noun in the sentences**.**

**For Example: He, She, It, They, I, Me, We, Us, Him,Her.**

Use of Pronoun in the sentences:

**My Father is talking. “He is talking.”**

**My mother is calling. “She is calling”**

* **Types of Pronoun:**

1. **Personal pronouns**

Personal pronouns replace nouns representing people. e.g**. He,She,They,I,We,It,You,They**.

It is primarily associated with a person i.e. first person, second person, or third person in grammar.

* **He lives in Delhi.**
* **She lives in London.**
* **They are going to Agra this weekend.**
* **I live in Mumbai.**
* **We are planning to visit Manali in this summer.**
* **You like to play Cricket.**

1. **Demonstrative pronoun**

Demonstrative pronoun represents a thing or things which are near in distance or time (this and these) or far in distance or time (that and those).

* **Near Distance: This is a book. (singular)**
* **This is a cat. (singular)**
* **This is the bat which I had used to make my maiden fifty. (singular)**
* **These are nice cars. (plural)**
* **Far distance: That is my pen don’t use it. (singular)**
* **That is a dog. (singular)**
* **That is our house. (singular)**
* **Those are my shoes. (plural)**

1. **Interrogative pronouns**

Interrogative pronouns are used when we need to ask questions**. e.g.**

* **What: What is your name? What is your age?**
* **Which: Which is your favorite cricket player? Which is the biggest country in the World?**
* **Who: Who is the director of Super30? Who is going to take this challenge? Who introduced you to Spokeies?**
* **Whose: Whose is the owner of this car?(Shows possessive or Ownership)**
* **Whom: Whom should we connect to pay the fee? To whom I should give this book?**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Subject** | **Object** |
| **Person** | Who | Whom |
| **Thing** | What | |
| **Person thing** | Which | |
| **Person** | whose | |

1. **Indefinite pronouns**

Indefinite pronouns are those words which don't refer to a specific person, place, or thing.

**For Example :**

* **Any,Anybody,Anyone,Anything, Everybody,Everyone,Everything,Nobody,No One,Nothing,Some,Somebody,Someone,Something,Either, Neither, Both(Two People Or Things, Seen Together), Several, Each, All, Everyenough,Many, And Much.**
* **Someone took my notebook.**
* **I have enough money to pay my fee.**
* **All are welcome in the world of Spokies.**
* **Many are called but only a few are selected.**
* **Everybody attended his graduationceremony.**
* **Anyone from the last row who can explain Indefinite Pronoun.**
* **It is nice to see you both again. Both Rakesh and Mahindra have a better chance to get success in the exam.**

1. **Possessive pronouns**

Possessive pronouns are words which are used to indicate something or someone has a direct relationship with something or someone else.Possessive pronouns are mostly used to show ownership between a person(s) and with the noun that follows it.

* **For Example:Possessive pronouns which can be used alone: his,hers,mine, yours,ours,theirs**
* **Possessive pronouns which are used before nouns: my,your,his,her,it's, our,your,their**

1. **Reciprocal pronouns**

Reciprocal pronoun expresses a mutual action or relationship between the individuals.

**For Example :**

* **Sumit and Vinita support each other intheir studies.**
* **We distribute sweets to each other on Diwali.**
* **Both of my friends love each other very much.**
* **North Korea and South Korea are blaming one another for their failures**.

1. **Relative pronouns**

A relative pronoun is the pronouns that often introduce dependent clauses in the sentences.

* **Who: Refers to a person (as the verb’s subject)**
* **Whom: Refers to a person (as the verb’s object)**
* **Which: Refers to an animal or thing**
* **What: Refers to a nonliving thing**

1. **Reflexive pronouns**

A reflexive pronoun ends with self or selves. It is used when the Subject and Object are the same in the sentence.

**For Example :**

* **He praises himself. (Here He represents Subject and He represents Object. And both are same )**
* **My driver was on leave today so I drive my car myself.**
* **Please take good care of yourself.**
* **We should clean our clothes ourself.**

Below is the Personal pronoun and it's reflexive forms:

* **I — myself**
* **you — yourself/yourselves**
* **he — himself**
* **she — herself**
* **one — oneself**
* **it — itself**
* **we — ourselves**
* **they — themselves**

1. **Intensive pronouns**

Intensive pronouns are used to add emphasis to the subject in a sentence.

**For Example :**

* **I wash my clothes myself.**
* **Rakesh built his home himself.**

You can test a word to see whether it’s an intensive pronoun by removing it from the sentence and checking to see if the sentence has the same impact or still make sense.

* **Pronoun Chart:**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Person** | **Number/Gender** | **Subject** | **Object** | **Dependent possessive (determiner)** | **Independent possessive** | **Reflexive** |
| **First** | Singular | I | Me | My | mine | myself |
|  | Plural | We | Us | Our | ours | ourselves |
| **Second** | Singular | You |  | Your | yours | yourself |
|  | Plural |  |  |  |  | yourselves |
| **Third** | Masculine | He | Him | His |  | himself |
|  | Feminine | She | Her |  | hers | herself |
|  | Neuter | It |  | Its |  | itself |
|  | Plural | They | Them | Their | theirs | themselves / themselves |

### Verb

A verb is a word that shows an **action**, **state**or **event**. A sentence doesn’t make any sense without a verb being used in it. A verb is used to indicate the action performed by a Subject.

**ForExample** :

* **My mother cooked me a nice breakfast.(action)**
* **I am going to DLF mall with my old school friend.(action)**
* **She is very friendly. (state)**
* **He is very close to my heart. (state)**
* **Ramesh is very handsome. (state)**
* **Rajesh is a very cool guy. (state)**
* **It is raining heavily. (event)**
* **It is too hot outside. (event)**
* **Types of verbs**

1. **Intransitive Verb**

An intransitive verb is a verb which does not take or use a direct object and can be used in a sentence with having any object into it.

**For Example :**

* **The baby was crying.**
* **They laughed uncontrollably.**
* **We talked.**
* **River flows.**
* **I sneezed.**
* **He bathed**
* **It is raining.**
* **You have grown now.**
* **My heart broke.**
* **He arrived.**
* **Rakesh resigned.**

1. **Transitive Verb**

A transitive verb is a verb which is used with one or more objects. Though the same verb can take a form of both transitive and Intransitive verb. E.g.

He reads.( Intransitive form)

He reads a Spokeies book.( Transitive form)

**More** **Example** of Transitive Verbs :

* **The driver stopped the train**
* **Manish plays cricket.**
* **Ramesh loves his mother.**
* **She wrote a letter.**
* **The child broke the glass.**
* **He gave me a thousand rupee.**
* **Mr. Singh teaches us English.**
* **I asked some questions to you all.**
* **We will go shopping.**
* **He called me in the night at 11 o’clock.**
* **I clean my room daily.**
* **He learned fluent English speaking from Spokeies.**
* **She loves to watch Hollywood movies.**
* **I admire your courage.**
* **We need to maintain product quality.**

1. **Linking Verb**

A Lining Verb is a verb that connectsaSubjectto its object or with a word that gives information about its subject. The most common linking verbs are forms of the verb to be(is, am, are, was, were, etc.),to become and to seem.

**For Example**:

* **I am excited about my new book launch.**
* **You feel exhausted after studying all night.**
* **She appears upset about the announcement.**
* **Dreams come true when we believe in them and act to fulfill them.**
* **All the audience(spectator) seem satisfied with the new play.**
* **Building a sweet home is a big task.**
* **Dhoni stays calm in the ground always.**
* **She remains faithful, even though it has been two years since he**

**left her.**

* **Thank god it's Friday. (TGIF)**
* **Narendra Modi Ji seems to be a great leader.**
* **She is doing well. She seems a great lady**

1. **Auxiliary Verb**

Auxiliary verbs are also known as helping verb. And are used together with a main verb to show the verb’s tense or to form a question or negative.

Auxiliary verbs can further be divided into 1. Primary Auxiliary and 2. Modal Auxiliary

* **Primary Auxiliary Verb list :**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Is | Has | Am | Are | Have | Had | Was |
| Were | Been | Do | Does | Being | Will | Shall |

* **Modal Auxiliary Verb list:**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Can | Must | Must | Should | Would | Could | Might |
| Ought to | need | be to | have to | used to | Dare |

**Example:**

* **Did you write all your reports?**
* **The secretaries haven’t written all the letters yet.**
* **Nikunj is writing an e-mail to a client at this moment.**
* **I am feeling happy.**
* **You are not so generous.**
* **Narendra Modi Ji was elected Prime Minister of India twice.**
* **Ravindra Jadeja is anall-rounder player.**
* **He can bat and bowl well.**
* **Do you know how to play cricket.?**
* **Does Rakesh know how to speak in English?**
* **I shall join Spokeies to learn EnglishSpeaking.**
* **Have you ever been to Chandigarh?**
* **Mahindra has a lot of money.**
* **He had planned his holiday in London.**
* **You must attend your classes every day.**
* **It would be good if you read English daily.**
* **We should find some other alternative solution to this problem.**

**Since it is not solved for long now.**

* **This was a very interesting experience to work with Mr. Rakesh**
* **It was a very good experience to learn English speaking with Mr.**

**Singh.**

* **I shall write a letter to the Municipal Corporation about the water**

**problem.**

1. **Phrasal verbs:**

Phrasal verbs are not a single words.But they are combinations of words that are used together to givea different meaning to the original verb.

**For Example:**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Break down |  | Carry on |
|  | Log in |  | Carryout |
|  | Tear up |  | Put on |
|  | Deal with |  | Put Off |
|  | Stand up |  | Check-in |
|  | Wake Up |  | Check out |
|  | Bank on |  | Count on |
|  | back up |  | end up |
| call back |  | get in |

* **Forms of Verbs: 500 Important English Verbs Forms list**

1. **Type -1: Transitive Verbs list**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Present Form** | **Hindi Meaning** | **Past Or 2nd Form** | **Past Participate Or 3rd Form** | **Ing Form** |
| Abide | रहना | Abode | Abode | Abiding |
| Arise | उठना | Arose | Arisen | Arising |
| Awake | जागना | Awoke | Awoken | Awaking |
| Be | होना | Was, Were | Been | Being |
| Bear | जन्मदेना | Bore | Born | Bearing |
| Bear | लेजाना, सहनकरना | Bore | Borne | Bearing |
| Beat | पीटना | Beat | Beaten | Beating |
| Become | होना | Became | Become | Becoming |
| Begin | अरम्भंकरना | Began | Begun | Beginning |
| Behold | देखना | Beheld | Beheld | Beholding |
| Bite | काटना | Bit | Bitten | Biting |
| Blow | हवापलना | Blew | Blown | Blowing |
| Bind | बाँधना | Bound | Bound | Binding |
| Bid | आज्ञादेना | Bade | Bidden | Bidding |
| Bid | नीलामीकीबोली | Bid | Bid | Bidding |
| Break | तोड़ना | Broke | Broken | Breaking |
| Choose | चुनना | Chose | Chosen | Choosing |
| Come | आना | Came | Come | Coming |
| Dig | खोदना | Dug | Dug | Digging |
| Do | करना | Did | Done | Doing |
| Draw | खींचना | Drew | Drawn | Drawing |
| Drink | पीना | Drank | Drunk | Drinking |
| Drive | चलाना | Drove | Driven | Driving |
| Eat | खाना | Ate | Eaten | Eating |
| Fall | गिरना | Fell | Fallen | Falling |
| Fight | लड़ना | Fought | Fought | Fighting |
| Feed | भोजनकरना | Fed | Fed | Feeding |
| Find | पाना | Found | Found | Finding |
| Fly | उड़ना, उड़ाना | Flew | Flown | Flying |
| Forbid | मनाकरना | Forbade | Forbidden | Forbidding |
| Forget | भूलना | Forgot | Forgotten | Forgetting |
| Forsake | छोड़ना | Forsook | Forsaken | Forsaking |
| Freeze | जमाना, जमना | Froze | Frozen | Freezing |
| Get | पाना, लाना। | Got | Got | Getting |
| Give | देना | Gave | Given | Giving |
| Go | जाना | Went | Gone | Going |
| Grind | पीसना | Ground | Ground | Grinding |
| Grow | उगना, उगाना | Grew | Grown | Growing |
| Hang | लटकाना, लटकना | Hung | Hung | Hanging |
| Hang | फॉसी पर. लटकानी | Hanged | Hanged | Hanging |
| Hide | गुप्त रखना, छिपाना | Hid | Hidden,Hid | Hiding |
| Hold | पकड़ना | Held | Held | Holding |
| Know | जानना | Knew | Known | Knowing |
| Lie | पड़े रहना, लेटना | Lay | Lain | Lying |
| Ride | चढ़ना | Rode | Ridden | Riding |
| Ring | बजना, बजाना | Rang | Rung | Ringing |
| Rise | उठना | Rose | Risen | Rising |
| Run | दौड़ना | Ran | Run | Running |
| See | देखना | Saw | Seen | Seeing |
| Shake | हिलाना, हिलना | Shook | Shaken | Shaking |
| Shine | चमकाना, चमकना | Shone | Shone | Shining |
| Shoot | गोली मारना | Shot | Shot | Shooting |
| Shrink | सिकुड़ना | Shrank | Shrunk | Shrinking |
| Sing | गाना | Sang | Sung | Singing |
| Sink | डूबना | Sank | Sunk | Sinking |
| Sit | बैठना | Sat | Sat | Sitting |
| Slay | मारना, कत्ल करना | Slew | Slain | Slaying |
| Slide | फिसलना | Slid | Slid | Sliding |
| Speak | बोलना | Spoke | Spoken | Speaking |
| Spell | हिज्जे करना | Spelt | Spelt | Spelling |
| Spit | थूकना | Spat | Spat | Spitting |
| Spring | कूदना, | Sprang | Sprung | Springing |
| Stand | खड़े होना | Stood | Stood | Standing |
| Steal | चुराना | Stole | Stolen | Stealing |
| Stick | चिपकाना | Stuck | Stuck | Sticking |
| Sting | डंक मारना | Stung | Stung | Stinging |
| Strike | मारना, धवके देना | Struck | Struck | Striking |
| Stride | लम्बे पग रखना | Strode | Stridden | Striding |
| Swear | शपथ लेना | Swore | Sworn | Swearing |
| Swim | तैरना | Swam | Swum | Swimming |
| Swing | झुलना | Swung | Swung | Swinging |
| Take | लेना | Took | Taken | Taking |
| Tear | फाड़ना | Tore | Torn | Tearing |
| Throw | फेंकना | Threw | Thrown | Throwing |
| Wear | पहिनना | Wore | Worn | Wearing |
| Weave | बुनना | Wove | Woven | Weaving |
| Win | जीतना | Won | Won | Winning |
| Wind | ऐंठना, लपेटना | Wound | Wound | Winding |
| Write | लिखना | Wrote | Written | Writing |

1. **Type 2 – ed is added in the last of the verb’s Present form to make Past and Past Participate form**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Present Form** | **Hindi Meaning** | **Past Or 2nd Form** | **Past Participate Or 3rd Form** | **Ing Form** |
| Abuse | गालीदेना। | Abused | Abused | Abusing |
| Act | करना | Acted | Acted | Acting |
| Accuse | अपराधीठहराना | Accused | Accused | Accusing |
| Advise | सलाहदेना | Advised | Advised | Advising |
| Allow | आज्ञादेना | Allowed | Allowed | Allowing |
| Answer | उत्तरदेना | Answered | Answered | Answering |
| Appear | प्रकटहोना। | Appeared | Appeared | Appearing |
| Appoint | नियुक्तकरना | Appointed | Appointed | Appointing |
| Arrive | आना, पहुँचना | Arrived | Arrived | Arriving |
| Arrest | गिरफ्तारकरना | Arrested | Arrested | Arresting |
| Ask | पूछना, कहना | Asked | Asked | Asking |
| Attack | आक्रमणकरना | Attacked | Attacked | Attacking |
| Bathe | नहाना | Bathed | Bathed | Bathing |
| Believe | विश्वासकरना | Believed | Believed | Believing |
| Beg | माँगना | Begged | Begged | Begging |
| Benefit | लाभदेना | Benefited | Benefited | Benefiting |
| Boast | शेखीबघारना | Boasted | Boasted | Boasting |
| Borrow | उधारलेना | Borrowed | Borrowed | Borrowing |
| Bend | . झुकना | Bent | Bent | Bending |
| Boil | उबालना | Boiled | Boiled | Boiling |
| Bring | लाना | Brought | Brought | Bringing |
| Brush | साफकरना | Brushed | Brushed | Brushing |
| Build | बनाना, बनवाना | Built | Built | Building |
| Burn | जलाना, जलना | Burnt | Burnt | Burning |
| Buy | खरीदना | Bought | Bought | Buying |
| Call | पुकारना | Called | Called | Calling |
| Capture | पकड़ना | Captured | Captured | Capturing |
| Collect | एकत्रितकरना | Collected | Collected | Collecting |
| Comb | कंघीकरना | Combed | Combed | Combing |
| Change | बदलना | Changed | Changed | Changing |
| Copy | नकल करना । | Copied | Copied | Copying |
| Сагry | ले जाना | Carried | Carried | Carrying |
| Care | देखभाल करना : | Cared | Cared | Caring |
| Catch | पकड़ना . | Caught | Caught | Catching |
| Clean | साफ करना। | Cleaned | Cleaned | Cleaning |
| Climb | चढ़ना | Climbed | Climbed | Climbing |
| Clothe | कपड़े पहिनना | | Clothed | Clothed | Clothing |
| Close | बन्द करना | Closed | Closed | Closing |
| Cook | भोजन पकाना । | Cooked | Cooked | Cooking |
| Conceal | छिपाना | Concealed | Concealed | Concealing |
| Confuse | घबराना। | Confused | Confused | Confusing |
| Consult | सलाह लेना | Consulted | Consulted | Consulting |
| Clear | स्पष्ट करना | Cleared | Cleared | Clearing |
| Creep | रेंगना | | Crept | Crept | Creeping |
| Cross | पार करना | Crossed | Crossed | Crossing |
| Complete | पूरा करना | Completed | Completed | Completing |
| Compare | तुलना करना । | Compared | Compared | Comparing |
| Count | गिनना | Counted | Counted | Counting |
| Cry | चिल्लाना | Cried | Cried | Crying |
| Defend | रक्षा करना | Defended | Defended | Defending |
| Decorate | सजाना | Decorated | Decorated | Decorating |
| Defeat | हराना | Defeated | Defeated | Defeating |
| Dare | साहस करना : | Dared | Dared | Daring |
| Die | मरना : | Died | Died | Dying |
| Divide | बाटना | Divided | Divided | Dividing |
| Deal | व्यवहार करना | Dealt | Dealt | Dealing |
| Drown | डूबना | Drowned | Drowned | Drowning |
| Dry | सुखाना | Dried | Dried | Drying |
| Dream | स्वप्न देखना | Dreamt | Dreamt | Dreaming |
| Dwell | ध्यान केन्द्रित करना | Dwelt | Dwelt | Dwelling |
| Dye | रंगना । | Dyed | Dyed | Dyeing |
| Earn | कमाना | Earned | Earned | Earning |
| Enter | प्रवेश करना | Entered | Entered | Entering |
| Fail | असफल होना | Failed | Failed | Failing |
| Fear | डरना | Feared | Feared | Fearing |
| Finish | समाप्त करना | Finished | Finished | Finishing |
| Float | तैरना | Floated | Floated | Floating |
| Fine | जुर्माना करना | Fined | Fined | Fining |
| Feel | अनुभव करना। | Felt | Felt | Feeling |
| Face | मुकाबिला करना | Faced | Faced | Facing |
| Found | स्थापना करना | Founded | Founded | Founding |
| Flee | शीघ्र भाग जाना | Fled | Fled | Fleeing |
| Grant | स्वीकार करना | Granted | Granted | Granting |
| Gain | प्राप्त करना। | Gained | Gained | Gaining |
| Graze | चरना | Grazed | Grazed | Grazing |
| Have | रखना | Had | Had | Having |
| Hate | घृणा करना। | Hated | Hated | Hating |
| Hear | सुनना | Heard | Heard | Hearing |
| Help | सहायता करना : | Helped | Helped | Helping |
| Hire | किराये पर लेना | Hired | Hired | Hiring |
| Hunt | शिकार करना | Hunted | Hunted | Hunting |
| Invite | आमन्त्तित करना | Invited | Invited | Inviting |
| Jump | कूदना : | Jumped | Jumped | Jumping |
| Join | शामिल होना, जोड़ना | Joined | Joined | Joining |
| Keep | रखना | Kept | Kept | Keeping |
| Kick | ठोकर मारना | | Kicked | Kicked | Kicking |
| Kill | मारना | Killed | Killed | Killing |
| Lay | रखना, फैलाना | Laid | Laid | Laying |
| Laugh | हँसना | Laughed | Laughed | Laughing |
| Lead | मार्ग दिखाना | Led | Led | Leading |
| Learn | सीखना, याद करना | Learnt | Learnt | Learning |
| Leave | छोड़ना | Left | Left | Leaving |
| Lend | उधार देना | Lent | Lent | Lending |
| Like | पसन्द करना | Liked | Liked | Liking |
| Lift | उठाना | Lifted | Lifted | Lifting |
| Listen | सुनना | Listened | Listened | Listening |
| Live | रहना | Lived | Lived | Living |
| Look | देखना | | Looked | Looked | Looking |
| Lose | खोना | Lost | Lost | Losing |
| Love | प्रेम करना | Loved | Loved | Loving |
| Make | बनाना | Made | Made | Making |
| Meet | मिलना | Met | Met | Meeting |
| Melt | पिघलना | Melted | Melted | Melting |
| Miss | चूकना | Missed | Missed | Missing |
| Move | हिलना | Moved | Moved | Moving |
| Mean | अर्थ निकालना | Meant | Meant | Meaning |
| Name | नाम रखना। | Named | Named | Naming |
| Need | आवश्यकता | Needed | Needed | Needing |
| Obey | आज्ञा मानना . | Obeyed | Obeyed | Obeying |
| Obtain | प्राप्त करना | Obtained | Obtained | Obtaining |
| Open | खोलना | Opened | Opened | Opening |
| Order | आज्ञा देना। | Ordered | Ordered | Ordering |
| Oppose | विरेध करना | Opposed | Opposed | Opposing |
| Owe | ऋणी होना। | Owed | Owed | Owing |
| Polish | चमकाना | Polished | Polished | Polishing |
| Pass | गुजरना, पास होना। | Passed | Passed | Passing |
| Pay | देना, चुकाना | Paid | Paid | Paying |
| Pack | बाँधना | Packed | Packed | Packing |
| Permit | आज्ञा देना। | Permitted | Permitted | Permitting |
| Play | खेलना । | Played | Played | Playing |
| Pray | प्रार्थना करना | Prayed | Prayed | Praying |
| Preach | धर्मोपदेश करना | | Preached | Preached | Preaching |
| Prefer | अधिक पसन्द करना | Preferred | Preferred | Preferring |
| Prove | सिद्ध करना - | Proved | Proved | Proving |
| Promise | वायदा करना | Promised | Promised | Promising |
| Pull | खींचना | Pulled | Pulled | Pulling |
| Pursue | पीछा करना | Pursued | Pursued | Pursuing |
| Punish | दंड देना | Punished | Punished | Punishing |
| Prepare | तैयार करना। | Prepared | Prepared | Preparing |
| Plough | हल -चलाना | Ploughed | Ploughed | Ploughing |
| Praise | प्रशंसा करना | Praised | Praised | Praising |
| Place | रखना | Placed | Placed | Placing |
| Please | प्रसन्न करना । | Pleased | Pleased | Pleasing |
| Push | धक्का मरना। | Pushed | Pushed | Pushing |
| Plunder | लूटना | Plundered | Plundered | Plundering |
| Pardon | क्षमा करना। | Pardoned | Pardoned | Pardoning |
| Pluck | तोड़ना | Plucked | Plucked | Plucking |
| Promote | उन्नति देना | Promoted | Promoted | Promoting |
| Publish | प्रकाशित करना | Published | Published | Publishing |
| Prevent | रोकना | Prevented | Prevented | Preventing |
| Present | उपस्थित होना | Presented | Presented | Presenting |
| Plant | पेड़ लगाना | Planted | Planted | Planting |
| Rain | वर्षा होना | Rained | Rained | Raining |
| Reach | पहुँचना | Reached | Reached | Reaching |
| Receive | प्राप्त करना | Received | Received | Receiving |
| Raise | उठना, उठाना | Raised | Raised | Raising |
| Refuse | अस्वीकार करना | Refused | Refused | Refusing |
| Resign | त्याग-पत देना | Resigned | Resigned | Resigning |
| Rest | आराम करना: | Rested | Rested | Resting |
| Reply | उत्तर देना | Replied | Replied | Replying |
| Repair | मरम्मत करना | Repaired | Repaired | Repairing |
| Return | वापिस करना | Returned | Returned | Returning |
| Ride | चढ़ना । | Rode | Ridden | Riding |
| Rob | लूटना | Robbed | Robbed | Robbing |
| Say | कहना | Said | Said | Saying |
| Save | बचाना | Saved | Saved | Saving |
| Sow | बोना | Sowed | Sowed | Sowing |
| Salute | प्रणाम करना | Saluted | Saluted | Saluting |
| Search | ढूँढना | Searched | Searched | Searching |
| Seem | दिखाई देना | Seemed | Seemed | Seeming |
| Send | भेजना | Sent | Sent | Sending |
| Sell | बेचना | Sold | Sold | Selling |
| Serve | सेवा करना | Served | Served | Serving |
| Select | चुनना | Selected | Selected | Selecting |
| Shave | दाढी बनाना | Shaved | Shaved | Shaving |
| Sleep | सोना | Slept | Slept | Sleeping |
| Slip | फिसलना | Slipped | Slipped | Slipping |
| Smile | मुस्कराता | Smiled | Smiled | Smiling |
| Solve | हल करना | Solved | Solved | Solving |
| Spend | खर्च करना | Spent | Spent | Spending |
| Stand | खड़ा होना | Stood | Stood | Standing |
| Start | आरम्भ करना | Started | Started | Starting |
| Succeed | सफल होना | Succeeded | Succeeded | Succeeding |
| Starve | मूखा मरना | Starved | Starved | Starving |
| Study | अध्ययन करना | Studied | Studied | Studying |
| Suffer | कष्ट सहना | Suffered | Suffered | Suffering |
| Stop | रुकना | Stopped | Stopped | Stopping |
| Stay | रुकना, ठहरना | Stayed | Stayed | Staying |
| Talk | बोलना | Talked | Talked | Talking |
| Teach | पढ़ाना । | Taught | Taught | Teaching |
| Tease | सताना, चिढ़ाना | Teased | Teased | Teasing |
| Tell | कहना | Told | Told | Telling |
| Thank | धन्यवाद देना | Thanked | Thanked | Thanking |
| Think | सोचना | Thought | Thought | Thinking |
| Tie | बॉधना | Tied | Tied | Tying |
| Tire | थकना, थकाना | Tired | Tired | Tiring |
| Touch | छूना | Touched | Touched | Touching |
| Trouble | दु:ख देना | Troubled | Troubled | Troubling |
| Travel | याता करना | Travelled | Travelled | Travelling |
| Treat | व्यवहार करना | Treated | Treated | Treating |
| Trust | विश्वास करना | Trusted | Trusted | Trusting |
| Try | प्रयत्न करना | Tried | Tried | Trying |
| Walk | टहलना | Walked | Walked | Walking |
| Wash | धोना | Washed | Washed | Washing |
| Wait | प्रतीक्षा करना | Waited | Waited | Waiting |
| Want | चाहना | Wanted | Wanted | Wanting |
| Weep | रोना | Wept | Wept | Weeping |
| Wave | हिलना, हिलाना | Waved | Waved | Waving |
| Watch | देखना | Watched | Watched | Watching |
| Whistle | सीटी बजाना | Whistled | Whistled | Whistling |
| Work | काम करना | Worked | Worked | Working |
| Wish | इच्छा करना | Wished | Wished | Wishing |
| Wound | घायल करना | Wounded | Wounded | Wounding |
| Yield | उत्पन्न करना | Yielded | Yielded | Yielding |

1. **Type 3 –verb’s having same Past and Past Participate form**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Present Form** | **Hindi Meaning** | **Past Or 2nd Form** | **Past Participate Or 3rd Form** | **Ing Form** |
| Bend | झुकना | Bent | Bent | Bending |
| Become | बनना | Became | Become | Becoming |
| Behold | निहारना | Beheld | Beheld | Beholding |
| Bleed | खूनबहाना | Bled | Bled | Bleeding |
| Bring | लाना | Brought | Brought | Bringing |
| Buy | खरीदना | Bought | Bought | Buying |
| Bind | बांधना | Bound | Bound | Binding |
| Broadcast | प्रसारण | Broadcasted | Broadcasted | Broadcasting |
| Burn | जलाना | Burnt/Burned | Burnt/Burned | Burning |
| Build | निर्माण | Built | Built | Building |
| Breed | अभिजननकरना | Bred | Bred | Breeding |
| Catch | पकड़ना | Caught | Caught | Catching |
| Cost | लागत | Cost | Cost | Costing |
| Clap | तालीबजाना | Clapped/Clapt | Clapped/Clapt | Clapping |
| Clothe | कपड़ेपहनाना | Clad/Clothed | Clad/Clothed | Clothing |
| Come | आना | Came | Come | Coming |
| Creep | रेंगना | Crept | Crept | Creeping |
| Dare | हिम्मतकरना | Dared | Dared | Daring |
| Deal | सौदाकरना | Dealt | Dealt | Dealing |
| Dig | गड्ढाकरना | Dug | Dug | Digging |
| Dream | स्वप्नदेखना | Dreamt/Dreamed | Dreamt/Dreamed | Dreaming |
| Dwell | ध्यानकेन्द्रितकरना | Dwelt | Dwelt | Dwelling |
| Feed | खानाखिलाना | Fed | Fed | Feeding |
| Feel | महसूसकरना | Felt | Felt | Feeling |
| Fight | लड़ाईकरना | Fought | Fought | Fighting |
| Find | खोजकरना | Found | Found | Finding |
| Foretell | पहलेसेकहदेना | Foretold | Foretold | Foretelling |
| Flee | भागना | Fled | Fled | Fleeing |
| Fling | हाथबढ़ाना | Flung | Flung | Flinging |
| Forecast | पूर्वानुमान | Forecast/Forecasted | Forecast/Forecasted | Forecasting |
| Get | प्राप्तकरना | Got | Got/Gotten | Getting |
| Hang | लटकना | Hung/Hanged | Hung/Hanged | Hanging |
| Hear | सुनना | Heard | Heard | Hearing |
| Hold | पकड़ना | Held | Held | Holding |
| Inlay | पञ्जीकारीकरना | Inlaid | Inlaid | Inlaying |
| Keep | रखना | Kept | Kept | Keeping |
| Kneel | घुटनाटेकना | Knelt/Kneeled | Knelt/Kneeled | Kneeling |
| Knit | बुनना | Knit/Knitted | Knit/Knitted | Knitting |
| Lay | अंडादेना | Laid | Laid | Laying |
| Lead | नेतृत्वकरना | Led | Led | Leading |
| Leap | लांघना | Leapt/Leaped | Leapt/Leaped | Leaping |
| Learn | सीखना | Learnt/Learned | Learnt/Learned | Learning |
| Leave | छोड़ना | Left | Left | Leaving |
| Lend | उधारदेना | Lent | Lent | Lending |
| Lie | झूठबोलना | Lied | Lied | Lying |
| Light | रोशनीकरना | Lit | Lit | Lighting |
| Lose | खोना | Lost | Lost | Losing |
| Make | बनाना | Made | Made | Making |
| Mean | मतलब | Meant | Meant | Meaning |
| Meet | मिलना | Met | Met | Meeting |
| Melt | पिघलना | Melted | Molten/Melted | Melting |
| Misunderstand | गलतसमझना | Misunderstood | Misunderstood | Misunderstanding |
| Mislead | गुमराहकरना | Misled | Misled | Misleading |
| Overhear | सुनपाना | Overheard | Overheard | Overhearing |
| Pay | वेतन | Paid | Paid | Paying |
| Prove | साबितकरना | Proved | Proven/Proved | Proving |
| Rid | छुटकारा | Rid/Ridded | Rid/Ridded | Ridding |
| Run | दौड़ना | Ran | Run | Running |
| Say | कहना | Said | Said | Saying |
| Seek | मांगना | Sought | Sought | Seeking |
| Sell | बेचना | Sold | Sold | Selling |
| Send | भेजना | Sent | Sent | Sending |
| Shine | चमकना | Shone | Shone | Shining |
| Shoot | गोलीमारना | Shot | Shot | Shooting |
| Sit | बैठना | Sat | Sat | Sitting |
| Sleep | नींद | Slept | Slept | Sleeping |
| Slink | लज्जितहोकरजाना | Slunk | Slunk | Slinking |
| Smell | सूंधना | Smelt/Smelled | Smelt/Smelled | Smelling |
| Speed | गतिबढ़ाना | Sped/Speeded | Sped/Speeded | Speeding |
| Spell | शब्द-विन्यासकरना,हिज्जेकरना | Spelt/Spelled | Spelt/Spelled | Spelling |
| Spend | व्यतीतकरना | Spent | Spent | Spending |
| Spill | छलकाना | Spilt/Spilled | Spilt/Spilled | Spilling |
| String | धागेमेंगूँथना | Strung | Strung | Stringing |
| Stick | चिपकना | Stuck | Stuck | Sticking |
| Sting | डंकमारना | Stung | Stung | Stinging |
| Stink | दुर्गंधनिकलना | Stank | Stunk | Stinking |
| Sweat | पसीनाआना | Sweat/Sweated | Sweat/Sweated | Sweating |
| Sweep | झाड़ूलगाना | Swept/Sweeped | Swept/Sweeped | Sweeping |
| Swing | झूला | Swung | Swung | Swinging |
| Teach | सिखाना,पढ़ाना | Taught | Taught | Teaching |
| Tell | बतलाना | Told | Told | Telling |
| Think | सोचना | Thought | Thought | Thinking |
| Tear | फटना,फटजाना | Tore | Torn | Tearing |
| Understand | समझना | Understood | Understood | Understanding |
| Wed | शादीकरना | Wed/Wedded | Wed/Wedded | Wedding |
| Weep | रोना | Wept | Wept | Weeping |
| Wet | गीलाकरना | Wet/Wetted | Wet/Wetted | Wetting |
| Win | जीतना | Won | Won | Winning |
| Wind | हवाचलना | Wound | Wound | Winding |
| Wring | मरोड़ना | Wrung | Wrung | Wringing |
| Withhold | रोकलेना | Withheld | Withheld | Withholding |

1. **Type 4 – verb’s having the same Present, Past and Past Participate form**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Present Form** | **Hindi Meaning** | **Past Or 2nd Form** | **Past Participate Or 3rd Form** | **Ing Form** |
| Bet | शर्तलगाना | Bet | Bet | Betting |
| Burst | फटना | Burst | Burst | Bursting |
| Bid | बोलीलगाना | Bid | Bid | Bidding |
| Cast | सांचाबनाना | Cast | Cast | Casting |
| Cut | काटना | Cut | Cut | Cutting |
| Hit | मारना | Hit | Hit | Hitting |
| Hurt | चोटपहुंचाना | Hurt | Hurt | Hurting |
| Let | चलो | Let | Let | Letting |
| Put | डालना | Put | Put | Putting |
| Quit | छोड़ना | Quit | Quit | Quitting |
| Read | पढ़ना | Read | Read | Reading |
| Set | विन्यस्तकरना | Set | Set | Setting |
| Shed | ढलकाना,छप्परबनाना | Shed | Shed | Shedding |
| Slit | चीरना | Slit | Slit | Slitting |
| Shut | बंदकरना | Shut | Shut | Shutting |
| Sublet | किरायेपरलियेहुएकोकिरायेपरउठाना | Sublet | Sublet | Subletting |
| Thrust | धमाकेकेसाथगिरना | Thrust | Thrust | Thrusting |
| Upset | परेशानपरेशान | Upset | Upset | Upsetting |

1. **Type 5 – More useful/good to learn verbs list**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Congratulate | बधाई देना | Congratulated | Congratulated |
| Connect | जोड़ना | Connected | Connected |
| Conquer | जीतना | Conquered | Conquered |
| Consecrate | ज्ञान देना | Consecrated | Consecrated |
| Consent | सहमति | Consented | Consented |
| Conserve | संरक्षण | Conserved | Conserved |
| Consider | विचार करें | Considered | Considered |
| Consist | मिलकर बनता है | Consisted | Consisted |
| Consort | बातचीत करना | Consorted | Consorted |
| Conspire | मिल जाना | Conspired | Conspired |
| Constitute | गठित करना | Constituted | Constituted |
| Constrain | विवश करना | Constrained | Constrained |
| Construct | निर्माण करना | Constructed | Constructed |
| Contrast | विरोध करना | Contrasted | Contrasted |
| Contribute | योगदान करना | Contributed | Contributed |
| Contrive | ईजाद करना | Contrived | Contrived |
| Control | नियंत्रण करना | Controlled | Controlled |
| Convene | बुलाना | Convened | Convened |
| Converge | मिलना | Converged | Converged |
| Converse | उलटा | Conversed | Conversed |
| Convert | बदलना | Converted | Converted |
| Convey | संप्रेषित | Conveyed | Conveyed |
| Convict | मिद्धदोष अपराधी | Convicted | Convicted |
| Convince | विश्वास दिलाना | Convinced | Convinced |
| Decrease | कमी | Decreased | Decreased |
| Dedicate | समर्पित करना | Dedicated | Dedicated |
| Delay | विलंब | Delayed | Delayed |
| Delete | हटाना | Deleted | Deleted |
| Deny | मना | Denied | Denied |
| Depend | निर्भर | Depended | Depended |
| Deprive | वंचित | Deprived | Deprived |
| Derive | निकाले जाते हैं | Derived | Derived |
| Describe | वर्णन | Described | Described |
| Desire | इच्छा | Desired | Desired |
| Destroy | नष्ट | Destroyed | Destroyed |
| Detach | अलग करना | Detached | Detached |
| Detect | पता लगाना | Detected | Detected |
| Determine | निर्धारित | Determined | Determined |
| Develop | विकसित करना | Developed | Developed |
| Educate | शिक्षित करना | Educated | Educated |
| Empower | सशक्त | Empowered | Empowered |
| Empty | खाली करना | Emptied | Emptied |
| Encourage | प्रोत्साहित करना | Encouraged | Encouraged |
| Encroach | अतिक्रमण करना | Encroached | Encroached |
| Endanger | जोखिम में डालना | Endangered | Endangered |
| Endorse | समर्थन | Endorsed | Endorsed |
| Endure | सहना | Endured | Endured |
| Engrave | उत्कीर्ण करना | Engraved | Engraved |
| Enjoy | का आनंद लें | Enjoyed | Enjoyed |
| Enlarge | विस्तार करना | Enlarged | Enlarged |
| Enlighten | सूचित करना | Enlightened | Enlightened |
| Erase | मिटाना | Erased | Erased |
| Escape | पलायन | Escaped | Escaped |
| Evaporate | लुप्त हो जाना | Evaporated | Evaporated |
| Exchange | अदला बदली | Exchanged | Exchanged |
| Exclaim | चिल्लाना | Exclaimed | Exclaimed |
| Exclude | निकालना | Excluded | Excluded |
| Exist | मौजूद,अस्तित्व रखना | Existed | Existed |
| Expand | विस्तार करना | Expanded | Expanded |
| Expect | उम्मीद | Expected | Expected |
| Explain | समझाना | Explained | Explained |
| Explore | अन्वेषण करना,ढूँढना | Explored | Explored |
| Express | व्यक्त करना | Expressed | Expressed |
| Extend | विस्तार | Extended | Extended |
| Recognize | पहचानना | Recognized | Recognized |
| Recollect | स्मरण करना | Recollected | Recollected |
| Reduce | कम करना | Reduced | Reduced |
| Refer | उल्लेख | Referred | Referred |
| Reflect | प्रतिबिंबित | Reflected | Reflected |
| Regard | सम्मान | Regarded | Regarded |
| Regret | खेद करना | Regretted | Regretted |
| Relate | सम्बद्ध होना | Related | Related |
| Relax | आराम ,विश्राम करना | Relaxed | Relaxed |
| Rely | भरोसा करना | Relied | Relied |
| Remain | बचना | Remained | Remained |
| Remake | पुनर्निर्माण | Remade | Remade |
| Remove | हटाना | Removed | Removed |
| Rend | उखड़ना | Rent | Rent |
| Renew | नवीकरण करना | Renewed | Renewed |
| Restrain | नियंत्रित करना | Restrained | Restrained |
| Retain | बनाए रखने के | Retained | Retained |
| Sacrifice | बलिदान करना,त्याग करना | Sacrificed | Sacrificed |
| Satisfy | बदला देना | Satisfied | Satisfied |
| Scale | तराज़ू में तोलना | Scaled | Scaled |
| Scam | घोटाला करना | Scammed | Scammed |
| Scan | जाँचना | Scanned | Scanned |
| Scar | चोट का निसान,घाव का चिह्न पड़ना | Scarred | Scarred |
| Scare | डराना | Scared | Scared |
| Scarify | धमकी देना | Scarified | Scarified |
| Suggest | सुझाना | Suggested | Suggested |
| Summon | बुलवाना,गवाही के लिये सम्मन देना | Summoned | Summoned |
| Supply | आपूर्ति करना | Supplied | Supplied |
| Support | समर्थन करना | Supported | Supported |
| Suppose | मान लीजिए | Supposed | Supposed |
| Surge | लहर उठना,उमड़ना | Surged | Surged |
| Surpass | पार करना | Surpassed | Surpassed |
| Surround | चारों ओर से घेरना | Surrounded | Surrounded |
| Survey | सर्वेक्षण करना | Surveyed | Surveyed |
| Survive | बना रहना | Survived | Survived |
| Swallow | निगलना | Swallowed | Swallowed |
| Transfer | स्थानांतरण | Transferred | Transferred |
| Transform | परिवर्तन करना | Transformed | Transformed |
| Translate | अनुवाद करना | Translated | Translated |
| Withdraw | निकालना | Withdrew | Withdrawn |
| Worry | चिंता करना | Worried | Worried |
| Worship | पूजा करना | Worshipped | Worshipped |

### Adjectives

An adjective is a word that describes or modifies a noun or pronoun.

Adjectives generally answer the following questions: What kind? What color? What size? Which one? How many or how much?

**For Example:**

* **The tall professor.**
* **The lazy lieutenant.**
* **A firm decision.**
* **Two month’s pay.**
* **Six-year-old child**
* **He was the unhappiest.**
* **He is therichest man.**

An adjective may be found in two places in a sentence.

**Preceding a noun:** Most adjectives are found immediately before the noun that they modify. A noun can have more than one adjective describing it**.**

**For Example:**

* **She is a pretty girl. (‘Pretty’ modifies ‘girl’)**

**Following a linking verb:** These are adjectives that follow the linking verb which modify the subject of the verb.

**For Example:**

* **She looks glum and gloomy. (‘Glum’ and ‘gloomy’ modifies ’she’)**
* **Types of Adjectives:**
  1. **Possessive Adjectives:** As the name indicates, possessive adjectives are used to indicate possession. They **are:**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **My** | **Her** | **Our** | **Your** | **His** | **Its** | **Their** |

**Possessive adjectives also function as possessive pronouns.**

**2.Demonstrative Adjectives:** Like the article, demonstrative adjectives are used to indicate or demonstrate specific people, animals, or things. These, those, this and that are demonstrative adjectives.

* **These books belong on that**
* **This movie is my favorite.**
* **Please put those cookies on the blue plate.**

**3.Coordinate Adjectives:**Coordinate adjectives are separated with commas or the word and, and appear one after another to modify the same noun. The adjectives in the phrase bright, sunny day and long and dark night are coordinate adjectives. In phrases with more than two coordinate adjectives, the word and always appears before the last one; **for Example**: **The sign had big, bold, and bright letters.**

Be careful, because some adjectives that appear in a series are not coordinate. In the phrase green delivery truck, the words green and delivery are not separated by a comma because green modifies the phrase delivery truck. To eliminate confusion when determining whether a pair or group of adjectives are coordinate, just insert the word and between them. If and works, then the adjectives are coordinate and need to be separated with a comma.

**4.Numbers Adjectives:**When they’re used in sentences, numbers are almost always adjectives. You can tell that a number is an adjective when it answers the question “How many?”

* **The stagecoach was pulled by a team of six**
* **He ate 23 hotdogs during the contest and was sick afterward.**

**5. Interrogative Adjectives:** There are three interrogative adjectives: which, what, and whose. Like all other types of adjectives, interrogative adjectives modify nouns. As you probably know, all three of these words are used to ask questions.

* **Which option sounds best to you?**
* **What time should we go?**
* **Whose socks are those?**

**6.Indefinite Adjectives:**Like the articles a and an, indefinite adjectives are used to discuss non-specific things. You might recognize them since they’re formed from indefinite pronouns. The most common indefinite adjectives are any, many, no, several, and few.

* **Do we have any peanut butter?**
* **Grandfather has been retired for many**
* **There are no bananas in the fruit bowl.**
* **I usually read the first few pages of a book before I buy it.**
* **We looked at several cars before deciding on the best one for our family.**

**7.Attributive Adjectives:**Attributive adjectives talk about specific traits, qualities, or features – in other words, they are used to discuss attributes. There are different kinds of attributive adjectives:

* Observation adjectives such as real, perfect, best, interesting, beautiful or

cheapest can indicate

value or talk about subjective measures.

* Size and shape adjectives talk about measurable, objective qualities

including specific physical

properties. Some **Example** include small, large, square, round, poor,

wealthy, slow and

* Age adjectives denote specific ages in numbers, as well as general ages.

**Example** are old, young,

new, five-year-old, and

* Color adjectives are exactly what they sound like – they’re adjectives that

indicate color. **Example**

include pink, yellow, blue, and

* Origin adjectives indicate the source of the noun, whether it’s a person,

place, animal or thing.

**Example** include American, Canadian, Mexican, French.

* Material adjectives indicate what something is made of. Some **Example**

include cotton, gold, wool, and

* Qualifier adjectives are often regarded as part of a noun. They make nouns

more specific; **Example**

includelog cabin, luxury car, and pillow cover.

* **Comparative and Superlative degree of Adjective:**

1. **Comparative adjectives**are used to compare one noun to another noun. In these instances, only two items are being compared. **For Example**,

* **You are more attractive than Subhash.**
* **Rohit is better opener batsman than Rahul.**

1. **Superlative adjectives**are used to compare three or more nouns. They're also used to compare one thing against the rest of a group. **For Example**,

* **Rakesh is the smartest among us.**
* **Bhuvneshwar Kumar is the best bowler in the INDIAN team.**
* **Spokeies is the best place to learn English Speaking.**

In most of the cases:

* **If we add ‘er’ it becomes comparative. Always remember ‘than’ is**

**used after a comparative degree.**

* + **And if we add ‘est’ it becomes Superlative. Always remember ‘the’**

**is used before superlative degree.**

* **List of 200 Adjective words with comparative and superlative degree**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Adjective** | **Meaning** | **Comparative degree** | **Superlative Degree** |
| Angry | गुस्सा | Angrier | Angriest |
| Ancient | प्राचीन | More Ancient | Most Ancient |
| Attractive | मोह लेने वाला | More Attractive | Most Attractive |
| Big | बड़ा | Bigger | Biggest |
| Bitter | कड़वा | Bitterer | Bitterest |
| Black | काली | Blacker | Blackest |
| Bloody | रक्तरंजित | Bloodier | Bloodiest |
| Blue | नीला | Bluer | Bluest |
| Bold | साहसिक | Bolder | Boldest |
| Brave | बहादुर | Braver | Bravest |
| Brief | संक्षिप्त करें | Briefer | Briefest |
| Bright | उज्ज्वल | Brighter | Brightest |
| Broad | व्यापक | Broader | Broadest |
| Busy | व्यस्त | Busier | Busiest |
| Calm | शांत | Calmer | Calmest |
| Cheap | सस्ता | Cheaper | Cheapest |
| Chewy | Chewy | Chewier | Chewiest |
| Chubby | गलफुल्ला | Chubbier | Chubbiest |
| Classy | उत्तम दर्जे का | Classier | Classiest |
| Clean | स्वच्छ | Cleaner | Cleanest |
| Clear | स्पष्ट | Clearer | Clearest |
| Clever | चतुर | Cleverer | Cleverest |
| Close | बंद करे | Closer | Closest |
| Cloudy | धुंधला | Cloudier | Cloudiest |
| Clumsy | अनाड़ी | Clumsier | Clumsiest |
| Cold | सर्दी | Colder | Coldest |
| Cool | ठंडा | Cooler | Coolest |
| Crazy | पागल | Crazier | Craziest |
| Creamy | मलाईदार | Creamier | Creamiest |
| Creepy | डरावने | Creepier | Creepiest |
| Crispy | खस्ता | Crispier | Crispiest |
| Cruel | निर्दयी | Crueler | Cruelest |
| Crunchy | कुरकुरे | Crunchier | Crunchiest |
| Curly | घुंघराले | Curlier | Curliest |
| Curvy | सुडौल | Curvier | Curviest |
| Cute | प्यारा | Cuter | Cutest |
| Damp | नम | Damper | Dampest |
| Dark | अंधेरा | Darker | Darkest |
| Deadly | घातक | Deadlier | Deadliest |
| Deep | गहरा | Deeper | Deepest |
| Dense | सघन | Denser | Densest |
| Difficult | कठिन | More Difficult | Most Difficult |
| Dirty | गंदा | Dirtier | Dirtiest |
| Dry | सूखा | Drier | Driest |
| Dull | कुंठित | Duller | Dullest |
| Dumb | गूंगा | Dumber | Dumbest |
| Dusty | मटमैला | Dustier | Dustiest |
| Early | जल्दी | Earlier | Earliest |
| Easy | आसान | Easier | Easiest |
| Expensive | महंगा | More Expensive | Most Expensive |
| Faint | बेहोश | Fainter | Faintest |
| Fair | निष्पक्ष | Fairer | Fairest |
| Fancy | कल्पना | Fancier | Fanciest |
| Far | दूर | Farther | Farthest |
| Fast | उपवास | Faster | Fastest |
| Fat | मोटी | Fatter | Fattest |
| Few | कुछ | Fewer | Fewest |
| Fierce | भयंकर | Fiercer | Fiercest |
| Filthy | गंदा | Filthier | Filthiest |
| Fine | ठीक | Finer | Finest |
| Firm | दृढ़ | Firmer | Firmest |
| Fit | फिट | Fitter | Fittest |
| Flaky | परतदार | Flakier | Flakiest |
| Flat | समतल | Flatter | Flattest |
| Fresh | ताज़ा | Fresher | Freshest |
| Friendly | अनुकूल | Friendlier | Friendliest |
| Full | पूर्ण | Fuller | Fullest |
| Funny | मजेदार | Funnier | Funniest |
| Gentle | सज्जन | Gentler | Gentlest |
| Gloomy | उदास | Gloomier | Gloomiest |
| Good | अच्छा | Better | Best |
| Grand | बड़ा | Grander | Grandest |
| Grave | गंभीर | Graver | Gravest |
| Greasy | चिकनी | Greasier | Greasiest |
| Great | महान | Greater | Greatest |
| Greedy | लालची | Greedier | Greediest |
| Guilty | दोषी | Guiltier | Guiltiest |
| Hairy | बालदार | Hairier | Hairiest |
| Handy | सुविधाजनक | Handier | Handiest |
| Happy | खुश | Happier | Happiest |
| Hard | कठिन | Harder | Hardest |
| Harsh | कठोर | Harsher | Harshest |
| Healthy | स्वस्थ | Healthier | Healthiest |
| Heavy | भारी | Heavier | Heaviest |
| High | उच्च | Higher | Highest |
| Hip | कमर | Hipper | Hippest |
| Hot | गरम | Hotter | Hottest |
| Humble | विनीत | Humbler | Humblest |
| Hungry | भूखे पेट | Hungrier | Hungriest |
| Interesting | दिलचस्प | More Interesting | Most Interesting |
| Itchy | खुजली | Itchier | Itchiest |
| Juicy | रसीला | Juicier | Juiciest |
| Kind | मेहरबान | Kinder | Kindest |
| Large | विशाल | Larger | Largest |
| Late | देर से | Later | Latest |
| Lazy | आलसी | Lazier | Laziest |
| Light | रोशनी | Lighter | Lightest |
| Likely | उपयुक्त | Likelier | Likeliest |
| Little | थोड़ा | Littler | Littlest |
| Lively | जीवंत | Livelier | Liveliest |
| Lonely | अकेला | Lonelier | Loneliest |
| Long | लंबा | Longer | Longest |
| Loud | जोर | Louder | Loudest |
| Lovely | सुंदर | Lovelier | Loveliest |
| Low | कम | Lower | Lowest |
| Mad | पागल | Madder | Maddest |
| Mean | मतलब | Meaner | Meanest |
| Messy | गंदा | Messier | Messiest |
| Mild | सौम्य | Milder | Mildest |
| Modern | आधुनिक | More Modern | Most Modern |
| Moist | नम | Moister | Moistest |
| Narrow | संकीर्ण | Narrower | Narrowest |
| Nasty | बुरा | Nastier | Nastiest |
| Naughty | नटखट | Naughtier | Naughtiest |
| Near | पास में | Nearer | Nearest |
| Neat | स्वच्छ | Neater | Neatest |
| Needy | दरिद्र | Needier | Neediest |
| New | नया | Newer | Newest |
| Nice | अच्छा | Nicer | Nicest |
| Noisy | शोर | Noisier | Noisiest |
| Odd | अजीब | Odder | Oddest |
| Oily | तेल का | Oilier | Oiliest |
| Old | पुराना | Older | Oldest |
| Plain | मैदान | Plainer | Plainest |
| Polite | सभ्य | Politer | Politest |
| Poor | गरीब | Poorer | Poorest |
| Popular | लोकप्रिय | More Popular | Most Popular |
| Pretty | सुंदर | Prettier | Prettiest |
| Proud | गर्व | Prouder | Proudest |
| Pure | शुद्ध | Purer | Purest |
| Quick | शीघ्र | Quicker | Quickest |
| Quiet | शांत | Quieter | Quietest |
| Rare | दुर्लभ | Rarer | Rarest |
| Raw | कच्चा | Rawer | Rawest |
| Rich | धनी | Richer | Richest |
| Ripe | परिपक्व | Riper | Ripest |
| Risky | जोखिम भरा | Riskier | Riskiest |
| Roomy | विशाल | Roomier | Roomiest |
| Rough | असभ्य | Rougher | Roughest |
| Rude | अशिष्ट | Ruder | Rudest |
| Rusty | ज़ंग खाया हुआ | Rustier | Rustiest |
| Sad | उदास | Sadder | Saddest |
| Safe | सुरक्षित | Safer | Safest |
| Salty | नमकीन | Saltier | Saltiest |
| Sane | समझदार | Saner | Sanest |
| Scary | डरावना | Scarier | Scariest |
| Shallow | उथला | Shallower | Shallowest |
| Sharp | तेज़ | Sharper | Sharpest |
| Shiny | चमकदार | Shinier | Shiniest |
| Short | कम | Shorter | Shortest |
| Shy | शर्मीला | Shyer | Shyest |
| Silly | मूर्खतापूर्ण | Sillier | Silliest |
| Simple | सरल | Simpler | Simplest |
| Sincere | ईमानदार | Sincerer | Sincerest |
| Skinny | पतला | Skinnier | Skinniest |
| Sleepy | निद्रालु | Sleepier | Sleepiest |
| Slim | पतला | Slimmer | Slimmest |
| Slimy | घिनौना | Slimier | Slimiest |
| Slow | धीमा | Slower | Slowest |
| Small | छोटा | Smaller | Smallest |
| Smart | होशियार | Smarter | Smartest |
| Smelly | बदबूदार | Smellier | Smelliest |
| Smoky | धुएँ के रंग का | Smokier | Smokiest |
| Smooth | चिकना | Smoother | Smoothest |
| Soft | मुलायम | Softer | Softest |
| Soon | शीघ्र | Sooner | Soonest |
| Sore | पीड़ादायक | Sorer | Sorest |
| Sorry | माफ़ कीजिये | Sorrier | Sorriest |
| Sour | खट्टा | Sourer | Sourest |
| Spicy | मसालेदार | Spicier | Spiciest |
| Steep | खड़ी | Steeper | Steepest |
| Strange | अजीब | Stranger | Strangest |
| Strict | कठोर | Stricter | Strictest |
| Strong | बलवान | Stronger | Strongest |
| Sunny | धूप | Sunnier | Sunniest |
| Sweaty | पसीने से तर | Sweatier | Sweatiest |
| Sweet | मिठाई | Sweeter | Sweetest |
| Tall | लंबा | Taller | Tallest |
| Tan | तन | Tanner | Tannest |
| Tasty | स्वादिष्ट | Tastier | Tastiest |
| Thick | मोटा | Thicker | Thickest |
| Thin | पतला | Thinner | Thinnest |
| Thirsty | प्यासा | Thirstier | Thirstiest |
| Tiny | छोटे | Tinier | Tiniest |
| Tired | थका हुआ | More Tired | Most Tired |
| Tough | कठोर | Tougher | Toughest |
| True | सच | Truer | Truest |
| Ugly | कुरूप | Uglier | Ugliest |
| Warm | गरम | Warmer | Warmest |
| Weak | कमज़ोर | Weaker | Weakest |
| Wealthy | धनी | Wealthier | Wealthiest |
| Weird | अजीब | Weirder | Weirdest |
| Wet | भीगा हुआ | Wetter | Wettest |
| Wide | चौड़ा | Wider | Widest |
| Wild | जंगली | Wilder | Wildest |
| Windy | तूफानी | Windier | Windiest |
| Wise | बुद्धिमान | Wiser | Wisest |
| Worldly | सांसारिक | Worldlier | Worldliest |
| Worthy | योग्य | Worthier | Worthiest |
| Young | युवा | Younger | Youngest |

### Adverb

Adverbs are describing words whichare used to describe or to add more information about Verbs,Adjectives and other Adverbs. Adverbs usually end with ‘ly’ e.g. quickly, slowly, carefully, loudly, extremely, finally.

Adverbs are important to indicate the time, manner, place, degree and frequency of something.

**Sentence using Adverbs**:

* **He eats slowly.**
* **The baby crawled very slowly**
* **He runs quickly.**
* **She walks slowly.**
* **You can answer my question quickly**
* **She sings loudly**
* **I will seriously consider your suggestion**
* **Please hold it carefully.**
* **Walks quickly else we will miss the train**.

**Adverbs modifying/define verbs:**

* **The horse ran slowly.**
* **The professor spoke quietly.**
* **He swims gracefully.**

**Adverbs modifying/define adjectives:**

* **She is very beautiful.**
* **He is an extremely talented actor.**
* **The patient is quite ill.**

**Adverbs modifying/define other adverbs:**

* **He runs quite slowly**
* **The professor spoke very quietly.**
* **He walks extremely slowly**.
  + - **Types of Adverbs:**

Five different types of adverbs are

**1. Adverbs of degree 2. Frequency 3. Manner 4. Place 5. Time**

**1. Degree Adverbs**

Degree Adverbs define the intensity of something i.e. ‘how much’ or upto ‘what extent’. It usually modifies other verbs, adjectives or adverbs making them stronger or weaker. **Adverbs** of **degree** are usually placed before the adjective, **adverb**, or verb that Adverbs modify.

**For Example:**

* **He’s very good at playing the piano.**
* **The English test was extremely difficult.**
* **Water was extremely hot.**
* **The movie is quite interesting.**

We also use too (Very much/excessively) and enough to show a degree of Adverbs.

**ForExample:**

* **Water is too hot.**
* **Weather is too hot outside.**
* **The music is too loud.**
* **He walks too fast.**
* **We have enough food to survive.**
* **Twenty years of Government service is enough to get Pension.**
* **We don’t have enough water for the next 20 years.**

**2. Frequency Adverb**

Adverbs of frequency describe ‘how often’ something may take place or happen. i.e. it explains the intensity of occurrence that an event happens.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Frequency Adverb** | **How Often(Frequency Percentage)** |
| Never | 0% |
| Hardly Ever | 10% |
| Rarely | 20% |
| Seldom | 30% |
| Occasionally | 40% |
| Sometimes | 50% |
| Often | 60% |
| Frequently | 70% |
| Usually | 90% |
| Always | 100% |

In addition, adverbs like “daily”, “weekly”, “monthly” and “yearly” describe frequency. But these adverbs of frequency answer “how often” in a more specific way.

**For Example**

* **I usually go to the gym on weekends.**
* **She always wake up at 7:00 am.**
* **The family rarely eat brown rice for dinner.**
* **I never take sick days.**
* **I often read in bed.**
* **I always finish my work on time.**
* **Kanishk always performs well in the exams.**
* **My boss usually comes at office around 9.30 am.**
* **Sometimes it is better to tell a lie.**
* **I hardly miss my Spokeies classes.**

**3. Manner Adverb**

Manner Adverb expresses how or in what way something happens or occurs. It usually ends with ‘ly’. e.g. Slowly, Quickly, Forcefully, Softly, etc.

**For Example:**

* **The dog runs quickly.**
* **She plays the music terribly.**
* **She spoke softly.**
* **He plays the violin beautifully.**
* **She went there forcefully.**
* **You will learn English gradually**
* **Monkeys were eating bananas happily.**
* **Dove washes your face gently.**
* **You should brush your teeth regularly.**
* **Move this chair slightly to the right side.**

Adverbs of manner tell us the way or how to do something. However, not all adverbs end with -ly. **For Example**, the words ‘fast’ and ‘well’ describe verbs but do not end in -ly.

* **The horse moved fast.**
* **Ramesh plays the piano well**.

**4. Place Adverb**

Adverbs of Place describes ‘where’ an action took place. We usually find adverbs of place after the main verb. **E.g. outside, inside.**

Place Adverbs can:

* **Refer to distances e.g. Nearby, far away, miles apart.**
* **Refer to the direction e.g. North, south, east, west, right, left, up,**

**down, etc.**

* **Indicate an object's position in relation to another object.**

**E.g.Below, between, above, behind, through, around and so forth,**

**etc.**

**For Example:**

* **If you want to see the hot air balloon, you will have to go outside.**
* **When she entered the classroom, she sat down.**
* **I searched everywhere but I couldn’t find him.**
* **He walks downstairs to meet his father.**
* **My native is 50 Km far from Delhi.**
* **Hospital is nearby from here.**
* **Come forward.**
* **I looked around but could not find you.**
* **Don’t walk outside.**

**5. Time Adverbs**

Time Adverbs describes the duration of an event occurs. Also, it can show when an action is complete. E.g. today, tomorrow, yesterday, everyday, afterward, recently, never, annually, daily, weekly, etc.

**For Example**

* **We will go to college tomorrow.**
* **Yesterday, we played in the basketball tournament.**
* **They watched movies all day.**
* **We have moved to Delhi recently.**
* **Tomorrow Spokeies will be open.**
* **Everyday you should learn atleast 20 new words.**
* **The newspaper arrives daily.**
* **They go out to dinner weekly.**
* **We should drink milk daily.**
* **Sunday is the weekly holiday for us.**
  + **Difference between Adjective and Adverbs**

**Adverbs and adjectives both are part of eight types of Parts**

**of Speech**.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Adjectives** | **Adverbs** |
| Adjectives modifies or explains about noun and pronoun | Adverbs modifies or explains about verbs, adjectives and other adverbs |
| Adjectives comes before noun | Adverbs usually comes after noun |

* **Example: Read the below sentences carefully to understand the difference between Adjectives and Adverbs**

**1.She is a pretty girl. She talks politely to me.**

In this sentence :

* 'pretty’ is an 'Adjective' as it describes about 'Noun' i.e. 'girl'. While
* 'politely' is an 'Adverb' as it describes about 'Verb' i.e. 'talk'.

**2.Lata ji is a nice singer. She sings sweetly.**

In this sentence :

* 'nice’ is an 'Adjective' as it describes about 'Noun' i.e. 'Lata Ji'. While
* 'sweetly' is an 'Adverb' as it describes about 'Verb' i.e. 'sings'.

**3.Richa is a great dancer. She dances beautifully.**

In this sentence :

* 'great’ is an 'Adjective' as it describes about 'Noun' i.e. 'Richa'. While
* 'beautifully' is an 'Adverb' as it describes about 'Verb' i.e. 'dances'.

**4.Vishal is a good driver. He drives carefully.**

In this sentence :

* 'good’ is an 'Adjective' as it describes about 'Noun' i.e. 'Vishal'. While

'carefully' is an 'Adverb' as it describes about 'Verb' i.e. 'drives'.

**5.Usain Bolt is the fastest runner in the world. He runs very fast.**

In this sentence :

* 'fastest’ is an 'Adjective' as it describes about 'Noun' i.e. 'Usain Bolt'. While

### Preposition

A preposition is a ‘word’ or a ‘group of words’ which used to show a connection between other words in a sentence.

Prepositions are used to link nouns, pronouns, or phrases to other words within a sentence.

Always remember:

A preposition is followed by a ‘Noun’. It is never followed by a ‘Verb’.

* **Correct use of Preposition**

कुछ Prepositions ऐसे हैं जिनका अर्थ प्राय: एक सा होता है, किन्तु प्रयोग में अन्तर होता है।

कृपया नीचे दिए गए Prepositions को ध्यान से समझो :

**1. At and In :**At छोटे स्थानों या बड़े स्थानों के एक भाग के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है। In बड़े  
स्थानों और देशों के लिए प्रयुक्त होता है।

**For Example,**  
**I stayed at Subhanpura.  
 Nikunj lives in Vadodara**.

**2. In and After:** In भविष्य काल की अवधि बताता है अर्थात इससे पता लगता है कि कार्य  
कुछ समय में होगा After द्वारा यह मालूम होता है कि कार्य कितने

समय बाद होगा।

**For Example,**  
**You will become well in two days.  
 I shall come after two hours.**

**3. Behind and After**Behind 'स्थान ( place)' के लिएऔर After समय

(time)' के लिएप्रयोगहोता है ।

**For Example:**  
 **The playground is behind the building.  
 I shall go home after two hours.**

**4. By and With :**By कार्य करने वाले अर्थात कर्ता से पूर्व प्रयुक्त होता है और with का

प्रयोगकिसी यंत्र के लिए होता है ।

**For Example**  
**A good song was sung by Lata.  
 Shyam killed a tiger with a sword.**

**5. Beside and Besides :**Beside 'निकट' के लिए आता है । Besides 'अतिरिक्त' के

लिएप्रयुक्त होता है ।

**For Example:**   
**My room is beside the kitchen.  
 Besides a book, he wants a pen.**

**6. Between and Among:** Between दो के लिए आता है । Among दो से अधिक के

लिए आताहै।

**For Example :   
 The mango was divided between the two brothers.  
 The milk was distributed among the five boys,**

**7. Below and Under :**Below किसी 'स्थिति का ज्ञान ' कराता है । Under किसी नीचे

कीवस्तु (स्थान) के लिएप्रयोगहोता है ।

**For Example** :  
**He was hit below the knees.  
 Don't put your coat under the table.**

**8. By तथा Till :** By किसी 'निश्चत समय' के लिए लिए आता है। Till 'तक अर्थात् 'अनिश्चित समय  
के लिए आता है।

**For Example**  
 **I shall reach there by 2 o'clock.  
 I shall wait till you return.**

**9. In and Into:**In 'विश्राम(rest)' प्रकट करता है I Into 'गति (motion)' बताता है।

**For Example:**  
**She jumped into the well.  
 We were in the classroom.**

**10. In, Before and Within:** In समय की अवधि के अन्त' के लिए और within 'अवधि

केभीतर' के लिए प्रयोग होता है। Before का प्रयोग समय

के पूर्व की ओर संकेत करने' के लिए होताहै।

**For Example:**  
 **I shall go there in a week**  
**He will go there within a week  
 She will go there before June 30**.

**11. Since, For and From :** Since and from for GH f Perfect 3R Perfect ContinuousnTenses में प्रयोग होते हैं। Since निश्चित समय के लिए तथा for अनिश्चित

समय के लिए आता है।From किसी समय के बिन्दु (Point of time)को बताता है तथा किसी भी tense में प्रयोग हो सकताहै। जैसे,

**For Example:**

**I have been reading this book since morning.   
 I have been reading this book for four hours  
 I shall begin my work from March 24  
 I stayed there from June to October.**

* **Relationships expressed by Prepositions**

**1.Relationship in space :**

**For Example**  
**The child ran across the road.  
The postman stood before the door.  
 The lady stood behind the curtain.  
 Yesterday your brother sat beside me in the party.  
 The sun is shining in the sky.  
 She came from her village.  
 He went towards the river.  
The cat lay under the table.  
 He climbed up the ladder.  
The servant is within the house.  
 Please put this book on the table.  
 The lion jumped into the river.  
The peon is standing at the gate.  
 I am going to my house.  
She is coming from her school.**

**2. Relationship in time :**

**For Example**  
 **He came here at 10 o’clock .  
 There are seven days in a week.  
 He reads English for two hours daily  
 He will finish this work before Sunday  
 He plays here from five to seven in the evening.  
 He arrived before you yesterday.  
 The train is running behind time.  
 He did nothing during the whole day.  
 Please send the book at an early date.  
 He will be here on Monday morning.  
 I have been suffering from fever since yesterday  
 It is five minutes to seven.**  
**I shall send your books within a month.  
 He will begin the work from 1st December.  
 He was careless throughout the year.**

**3. Relationship showing Agency or Instrumentality :**

**For Example**  
 **He went to Mumbai by car.  
 The servant cut his finger with a knife.  
 The house was destroyed by fire.  
 I heard this through a friend of mine.  
 He sold his house at auction.**

**4. Relationship showing Manners :**

**For Example**  
**I have learnt this lesson by heart.  
 The soldier fought with courage.  
 The team has won with ease.  
 He solved the problem without any difficulty.**

**5. Relationship showing Reason or Purpose :**

**For Example**  
 **He died of cholera yesterday.  
 I did it for your good.  
 My wife is suffering from fever.  
 The patient is shivering with fever.  
 This is a fit place for resting.   
 She lost her bag through her carelessness.**

**6.Relationship showing Measure, Standard, Rate or Value :**

**For Example**  
**He sold apples at six rupees a kilo.  
 The company charged interest at 8 percent.  
 Cloth is sold by the metre.  
 He is taller than I by four inches.  
It is nine by my watch.**

**7.Relationship showing Source, Origin or Inference :**

**For Example  
 Light comes from the sun.  
 This is a quotation from Amazon.  
 These lines are taken from the book “The Secret Recipe”.**

**At**

* They laughed at him.
* I was surprised at his conduct.
* The master is annoyed at his servant's behavior

**On**

* I will depend on you.
* His policy is based on truth.
* He called on me yesterday.
* The book is on the table
* Please put it on the chair
* He congratulated me on my success.

**Against**

* His friends conspired against him.
* The king fought against his enemies.

**In**

* He takes pride in his work.
* He will fail in English.
* Have confidence in me.

**Between**

* There is no difference between you and your brother.
* 2. Divide this mango between Ram and Shyam.

**Of**

* She died of cholera.
* He was found guilty of theft.
* Are you certain of your success?
* He is not afraid of mad dogs.

**For**

* The accused pleaded for mercy.
* Gandhiji was famous for simplicity.
* You are fit for nothing.
* He was ready for the journey.
* He was waiting for you.

**Over**

* The plane flew just over the building.
* I have no influence over him.
* He quarreled with me over a small piece.

**To**

* He goes to school daily.
* He works in his office from 10 to 4
* He did not agree to my.
* He should accede to your request.
* I am related to him.
* Please listen to me.

**From**

* The thief escaped from the prison.
* He is now free from work
* Our teacher has retired from service.
* He is suffering from a fever.
* You may select any pen from this box.
* We prefer milk to tea.
* I shall refer the case to the principal.
* He never spoke to anyone.
* I pray to God in the morning.
* The accused was condemned to death.
* I live close to my uncle's house.
* She complained to my mother.
* The book belongs to my mother.
* I invite you to dinner.

**With**

* Mr. Gupta is popular with his friends.
* The robber was charged with murder.
* The teacher is angry with the students.
* **Some more useful example of the use of Prepositions**

1.People will laugh at him.  
लोग उस पर हँसेंगे।  
2. The robber escaped from the jail.  
डाकूजेलसेभागगया।  
3. It is a pleasure to deal with him.   
उसके साथ व्यवहार करना आनन्ददायक है।  
4. The thief pleaded for mercy  
चोर ने दया की प्रार्थना की।  
5. He arrived at the station just in time.  
वह स्टेशन पर ठीक संमय पर पहुँचा।  
6. We arrived in Delhi early in the morning.   
हम बहुत सुबह देहली पहुँचे।

7. He quarreled with me for nothing.  
उसनेव्यर्थहीमुझसेझगड़ाकिया।  
8. They complied with my request.  
उन्होंनेमेरीप्रार्थनाकेअनुसारकामकिया।

9. She died of cholera.  
बहहैजेसेमरगयी।  
10. They agreed to my proposal.  
वेमेरेप्रस्तावसेसहमतहोगये।  
11. Hari never depends on his own efforts.  
हरीकभीअपनेप्रयत्नोंपरनिर्भरनहीं

12. She has failed in English.  
वह अँग्रेजी में फेल हो गयी है।  
13. Will you apply for this post?  
क्या आप इस पद के लिए आवेदन करेंगे?  
14. Rani is competing for the prize.  
रानी पुरस्कार के लिए प्रतियोगिता में भाग ले रही है।  
15. He was talking with his friend.  
वह अपने मिल्र से बात कर रहा था।  
16. A good boy is kind to the poor.  
एकअच्छालड़कागरीबोंपरदयालु  
17. I am fond of reading novels.  
मुझेउपन्यासपढ़नाप्रियहै।  
18. Mr. Gupta is tired of his life.  
मिस्टरगुप्ताअपनेजीवनसेदुःखीहैं।  
19. A faithful servant is true to his master  
एकवफादारनौकरअपनेमालिककेप्रतिसच्चाहोताहै।  
20. The boy was accused of theft.  
लड़केपरचोरीकादोषलगायागया  
21. Mr. Lall is not related to me.  
मिस्टरलालमेरेरिश्तेदारनहींहैं।  
22. The servant was punished for his carelessness.  
नौकरकोउसकीलापरवाहीकेलिएसजादीगयी।  
23. The robber was charged with murder.  
डाकू पर हत्या का आरोप लगाया गया।  
24. The traveler was warned of the dangers.  
यात्री को खतरों से सावधान कर दिया गया रहता है।  
25. The brave soldier was not afraid of death.  
वीर सिपाही मृत्यु से भयभीत नहीं था ।  
26. We prefer milk to tea.  
हमें चाय की अपेक्षा दूध अधिक प्रिय है।  
27. I beg of you to forgive me.  
मैं आपसे प्रार्थना करता हूँ कि मुझे क्षमा  
28. He does not care for what you say.  
उसे तुम्हारी बातों की निन्ता नहीं है।

29. My father takes care of me.  
मेरे पिता मेरी देखभाल करते हैं।  
30. I agree with you.  
में आपसे सहमत हूं।  
31. He does not agree to your proposal.  
वह आपके प्रस्ताव से सहमत नहीं है।  
32. He is obliged to you for your kindness.  
वह तुम्हारी कृपा के लिए अहसानमन्द है।  
33. I am sorry for it.  
मुझे इसका दुख है।  
34. Will you look into the matter  
क्या आप मामले की देखभाल करेंगे ?  
35. He was prevented from going there.  
उसे वहाँ जाने से रोक दिया गया।  
36. A son was born to her.  
उसको एक पुत्र उत्पन्न हुआ।  
37. You did not wait for the reply.  
तुमने उत्तर के लिए प्रतीक्षा नहीं की।  
38. I am not satisfied with your work.  
मैं आपके काम से सन्तुष्ट नहीं हूँ।  
39. Are you not afraid of work?  
क्या तुम्हें काम से डर नहीं लगता है?  
40. This servant is faithful to his master.  
यह नौकर अपने मालिक का स्वामिभक्त है।  
41. You are liable to fine.  
तुम पर जुर्माना किया जा सकता है।  
42. Are you not ready for the journey?  
क्या तुम यात्रा के लिए तैयार नहीं हो?  
43. Are you not ashamed of it?  
इस काम पर लज्जा नहीं आती  
44. The teacher is angry with the students.  
अध्यापक विद्यार्थियों से अप्रसन्न है।  
45. Wine is injurious to health.  
शराब स्वास्थ्य के लिए हानिकारक है।  
46. He was robbed of his valuables.  
उसकाकीमतीसामानलूटलियागया।  
47. Will tomorrow be convenient to you?  
क्याकलआपकेलिएसुविधाजनकहोगा?  
48. You should pray to God daily.  
तुम्हें प्रतिदिन ईश्वर की प्रार्थना करनीचाहिए।  
49. Will you not trust in God?  
क्या तुम ईश्वर में विश्वास नहीं रखोगे ?  
50. Pay attention to your teacher's words.  
अपने मास्टर साहिब के शब्दों पर ध्यान दो।

51. Beware of, thieves.  
चोरों से सावधान रहो।  
52. The Taj is superior to every other building.  
ताजहरदूसरीइमारतसेबेहतरहै।  
53.Socrates was condemned to death.  
सुकरात को मौत की सजा दी गयी।  
54. He proved false to his friend.  
उसने अपने मित्र को धोखा दिया।  
55. He is in need of a watch.  
उसे एक घड़ी की आवश्यकता है।  
56. He beat his son with a stick.   
उसने अपने पुत्न को छड़ी से पीटा।  
57. He has been ill since Monday.   
वह सोमवार से बीमार है।  
58. Are you not certain of your success?  
क्या तुम्हें अपनी सफलता पर विश्वास नहीं  
59. He takes delight in hunting.  
उसे शिकार करने में आनन्द आता है।  
60. He went there by train and came on foot.   
वहट्रेनसेवहाँगयाऔरपैदलआया।

### Conjunctions

A conjunction is a part of speech which is used to join/connectwords, phrases, clauses, or sentences.

Conjunctions **i.e.“to conjoin” = “join”.**

Conjunctions are often used in the compound and complex sentences.

**For Example:**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **And** | **Neither** |
| **As** | **Nor** |
| **Because** | **Not only** |
| **But** | **So** |
| **For** | **Whether** |
| **Just as** | **Yet** |
| **Either** | **Or** |

* **I will study both English writing and speaking.**
* **Neither Virat nor Rohit are making runs in this series.**
* **Neither I smoke nor use tobacco.**
* **Either you pay attention in the class or go out.**
* **India is doing well in both Shooting and Gymnastics in**

**Commonwealthgames.**

* **Either Rakesh or Ramesh will win this competition.**
* **I will get admission either in Delhi University or IIT.**
* **You must decide whether you stay or you go.**
* **The more you will practice, the better you will learn Spoken**

**English.**

* **Swinging is as good as running to lose weight quickly.**
  + - **Types of conjunctions**

1. **Coordinating conjunctions:**

They join words or phrases of equal or same syntactic importance. The coordinating conjunctions are for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so (known by the acronym FAN BOYS).

**Example:**

* **Sam and Johnny are friends.**
* **The story will be particularly interesting for the young adults, for it is written by their**

**favorite author.**

1. **Subordinating conjunctions:**

They join dependent clauses to independent clauses. Some of the most common subordinating conjunctions are if, that, though, since, although, until, unless, as, while, because, as soon as.

Subordinating conjunctions joining two clauses can appear between the clauses or at the beginning of the first clause.

**Example:**

* **If it rains, you have to take an umbrella.**
* **You have to take an umbrella if it rains.**

1. **Correlative conjunctions:**

They have paired conjunctions used to join parts of a sentence of equal rank.

The most common correlative conjunctions are either/or, neither/nor, not only/but, also, both/and.

**Example:**

* **Both my father and uncle have worked abroad.**
  + - **We have to wait for either the bus or the tram.**
    - **Conjunction Chart**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Coordinating conjunctions:** | **Subordinating conjunctions** | **Correlative conjunctions** |
| **For, And, Nor, But, Or, Yet, So**  **F.A.N.B.O.Y.S.** | **After Eventhough**  **Although every time**  **As If**  **As For As In Order That**  **As If Since**  **As Long As So**  **As Soon As So That**  **As Through That**  **Because Through**  **Before Unless**  **Even If Until**  **When Wherever**  **Wherever While** | **Either…Or**  **Not Only...But**  **(Also)**  **Neither...Nor**  **Both...And**  **Whether…Or**  **Just As…So**  **The…The**  **As…As**  **As Much…As**  **No Sooner…**  **Than**  **Rather Than…** |

### Interjections

An interjection is a part of speech that to express an emotion or a feeling i.e. surprise, disgust, joy, excitement, or enthusiasm.

interjections are included in a sentence (usually at the start) to express a feeling such as surprise, amaze, disgust, joy, excitement, or enthusiasm.

The comma (,)used to expressmild interjections. Strong interjections require an exclamation mark(!).

**For Example:**

* **Wow! We won the game.**
* **Oh, I don’t know about that.**
* **No, it is too early to think about that.**
* **Wow! did you write this book?**
* **Awesome! Delhi is a nice place.**
* **Wow! Tajmahal is a beautiful building.**
* **Well, lets start this presentation.**
* **Wow! What a beautiful dress.**
* **Oops, I am sorry. I done a mistake.**
* **Hey, I want to talk to you about my proposal.**
* **Hurray! I cleared the CAT exam.**
* **Some more Interjection list :**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Aha | Ouch |
| Gosh | Shoot |
| Goodness | Uh-Oh |
| Ha | Uh-Huh |
| Oh | Yup |
| Oops | Great |
| Oh No | Ha-Ha |
| Ooh | Yeah |
| Yo | Yippee |

## Determiners

Determiners are used before a noun to clarify the Noun. A determiner is used to identify whose or how many entities we are talking about in the sentence.

Important :- ऐसे शब्द जो किसी वाक्य में संज्ञा से तुरंत पहले प्रयोग किये जाते है और इस बात का निर्धारण करते हैं की किसकी बात हो रही है या फिर कितनी बात हो रही है।

For example:-

* Types of Determiners
* The definite article: the
* Indefinite articles: a, an
* Demonstratives: this, that, these, those
* Possessive determiners: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
* Quantifiers: a few, a little, much, many, a lot of, some
* Numbers: one, ten, thirty
* Distributives: all, both, half, either, neither, each, every
* Difference words: other, another
* Pre-determiners: such, what, rather, quite

### 1.10.1 Definite article

“The” is the definite article it is used to indicate the particular member of the noun. “The” is used when the speaker thinks that the listener knows what he is referring to in the sentence.

Important: “Definite article” भाषण का एक हिस्सा है जो एक विशिष्ट संज्ञा की पहचान करता है।“The” एकमात्र “Definite article” है।

“The” is used before a particular person or thing.

“The” is used before the common noun in a singular form to denote a class.

“The” is used before seas, rivers, gulfs, canals, bays, mountain ranges.

“The” is used before directions and natural phenomena.

“The” is used before events.

“The” is used before newspaper journals and holy book.

“The” is used before superlatives.

“The” is used before a common noun to give it a meaning of the abstract noun.

“The” is used before organs.

**For example**

* Where is the kitchen?
* The man who danced on stage is very famous.
* The Indian enjoys Cricket.
* This is the pen you gave me.
* The rose is the queen of flowers.
* The lion is the king of jungle.
* The mother in her made her so affectionate.
* The Red sea
* The Ganga
* The Sun
* The West
* The Bay of Bengal.
* The Great war
* The Bhagwat Gita.
* The Hindu
* The Hindustan time.
* He is the best dancer.
* This is the darkest cloud.
* The heart.
* The liver.

### Indefinite article

“A” and “An” are two indefinite articles. The indefinite article is invariable articles we use either “a” or “an” and it depends on the first letter of the word. “A” and “An” are used with singular count nouns when we introduce the noun for the first time or other expressions of quality.

Important: “Indefinite article” भाषण का एक हिस्सा है जो एक विशिष्ट संज्ञा की पहचान करता है। “a, an”   
“Indefinite article” है।

If the first alphabet of the word is consonant we will use “a”.

If the first alphabet of the word is vowel or silent “h” we will use “an”.

**For Example**

* **A ball**
* **An apple**
* **That is a book.**
* **This is an umbrella.**
* **What a nice day.**
* **You are a boy.**
* **I've finally got on orange.**
* **An elephant is drinking water.**
* **He bought a pent.**
* **There is a medical store near my house.**
* **Ramesh is a teacher.**
* **Ramesh is an engineer.**
* **A pair of ears.**
* **A couple of years.**
* **A lot of**
* **A few a little**

### Demonstratives

There are four demonstratives determiners in English: this, that, these, those. Demonstratives determiners show which person or things is been referring to in the sentences.

Important: “Demonstratives determiners " किसी व्यक्ति, स्थान, लेख, चीज़ का उल्लेख करते हैं और वक्ता से उनकी भौतिक या मनोवैज्ञानिक दूरी का निर्धारण करते हैं।

This/ These are uses when referring something close to the speaker.

That/Those are used when referring something far from the speaker.

This/that are used for singular noun.

These/those are used for plural noun.

**For Example**

* This dog is mine.
* That book is very useful.
* These apples are delicious.
* Those people are good workers.
* This book is mine.
* This is Raj’s house.
* This is good news.
* These mangoes are mine.
* What are you up to these days?
* This time I won’t be late.
* Is that Raja’s house over there?
* That must have been a nice surprise for you.
* Those mangoes are yours.
* Those days are long gone.
* We really surprised you that time.
* You can use that sugar for your cake.

### Possessive determiners

There are seven possessive determiners in English: my, your, his, her, its, our, their.

These determiners are used to show who owns or possess the thing or object which is been referred to in the sentence.

Important: " Possessive determiners" किसी व्यक्ति या किसी चीज़ पर अधिकार दिखाने को संशोधित करते है।

**For Example**

* This is my book.
* This is my pet.
* This is your book.
* This is your house.
* Can I take your book?
* His name is Raju.
* His friend is a teacher.
* Her friend is a doter.
* Her name is Pooja.
* The dog broke its leg.
* Its color is very bright.
* They are there relative.
* This is our school.
* This is our house.
* Where is their school?
* My brother will not go.
* Our books are kept there.

### Quantifiers

Quantifiers are used before a noun to indicate the amount or quantity of the noun. There are eight Quantifier determiners: a few, a little, much, many, a lot of and some.

Important: " Quantifier " का उपयोग संज्ञा से पहले संज्ञा की मात्रा या मात्रा को इंगित करने के लिए किया जाता है।

* Uncountable noun.

An uncountable noun is a noun you cannot count. (rice, information, tea, and sugar). Much and little is used as an uncountable noun.

Important: " Uncountable noun " एक संज्ञा है जिसे आप गिन नहीं सकते।

Much is used when we talk about large quantity.

A Little is used when we talk about a small quantity.

When we use much or little we use a singular helping verb like is.

**For Example**

* Do you eat much rice?
* I eat very little rice.
* I ate a little rice last night.
* There is much water in the jug.
* There is a little water in the jug.
* There is much milk in the bottle.
* There is a little milk in the bottle.
* She saves a little money every week.
* Harshita smiled just a little.
* We don’t have much money so we should find better jobs.
* We didn’t earn much profit from this sale.
* We had so much fun in the water park.
* Countable noun.

An uncountable noun is a noun you can count. (Books, people or children ). Many and few are used as an uncountable noun.

Important: " Countable noun " एक संज्ञा है जिसे आप गिन सकते है।

Many are used when we talk about large quantity.

A Few is used when we talk about a small quantity.

When we use many or few we use plural helping verb like are.

**For Example**

* Do you know many people here?
* I know very few people here.
* I know a few people here in the town where I lived before.
* There are many pencils in a box.
* There are a few pencils in a box.
* Raju has a few books.
* All he wanted was a few moments on her own.
* Don’t take all the Mangos. Just have a few.
* A few of his books were read abroad.
* There are too many horses in that field.
* Raman does not have many friends.
* Shobhit owns many properties in Delhi.
* Countable and uncountable noun.

A lot of and some are used as both countable and uncountable noun.

Important: इनका उपयोग " Countable and Uncountable noun."दोनों के रूप में किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* There are a lot of pencils in the pencil box.
* There are some pencils in the pencil box.
* There is a lot of water in the jug.
* There is some water in the jug.
* I have a lot of books.
* Raju has some books.
* There is a lot of milk in the bottle
* There is some milk in the bottle.
* I had some salad for lunch.
* He got some medicine from the store.
* I will have some news tomorrow.

### Numbers

| **Number** | **Cardinal** | **Ordinal** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | one | first |
| 2 | two | second |
| 3 | three | third |
| 4 | four | fourth |
| 5 | five | fifth |
| 6 | six | sixth |
| 7 | seven | seventh |
| 8 | eight | eighth |
| 9 | nine | ninth |
| 10 | ten | tenth |
| 11 | eleven | eleventh |
| 12 | twelve | twelfth |
| 13 | thirteen | thirteenth |
| 14 | fourteen | fourteenth |
| 15 | fifteen | fifteenth |
| 16 | sixteen | sixteenth |
| 17 | seventeen | seventeenth |
| 18 | eighteen | eighteenth |
| 19 | nineteen | nineteenth |
| 20 | twenty | twentieth |
| 21 | twenty-one | twenty-first |
| 22 | twenty-two | twenty-second |
| 23 | twenty-three | twenty-third |
| 24 | twenty-four | twenty-fourth |
| 25 | twenty-five | twenty-fifth |
| 26 | twenty-six | twenty-sixth |
| 27 | twenty-seven | twenty-seventh |
| 28 | twenty-eight | twenty-eighth |
| 29 | twenty-nine | twenty-ninth |
| 30 | thirty | thirtieth |
| 31 | thirty-one | thirty-first |
| 40 | forty | fortieth |
| 50 | fifty | fiftieth |
| 60 | sixty | sixtieth |
| 70 | seventy | seventieth |
| 80 | eighty | eightieth |
| 90 | ninety | ninetieth |
| 100 | one hundred | hundredth |
| 500 | five hundred | five hundredth |
| 1,000 | one thousand | thousandth |
| 1,500 | one thousand five hundred | one thousand five hundredth |
| 100,000 | one Lakh | lakhs |
| 1,000,000 | Ten lakh | Ten lakhth |

### Distributives

Distributive determiners used to talk about the members of a group as individuals, the whole group, about a divided group and pairs of people or things. All, both, half, either, neither, each and everyone is Distributive determiners.

Important: " Distributive determiners" का उपयोग लोगों या समूह में चीजों को विभाजित करने के लिए किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **I gave each kid some candies.**
* **I gave every kid some chocolate.**
* **He told each of us our work.**
* **I go to visit my father each week.**
* **Every morning Raman goes jogging.**
* **I like all the cats.**
* **I will need all of the water.**
* **All of us are coming.**
* **I had half a cup of coffee left.**
* **I bought half a kilo of rice.**
* **Half of us are coming.**
* **Both children were born in Delhi.**
* **I will come on either Saturday or Sunday.**
* **Neither of us was on time.**

### Difference Determiners

The Difference determiners are other and another. Theses determiners are used to talk about something different, remaining, or additional.

Important: कुछ अलग, शेष या अतिरिक्त के बारे में बात करने के लिए “Difference determiners” का उपयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **Do you have other pants?**
* **There are other works you could try.**
* **Is there any other fruit?**
* **I have some other milk we could use.**
* **We have no other chance.**
* **Have another biscuit.**
* **Would you like another cup of coffee?**
* **He has another sister.**
* **I don't have another bike.**
* **I'll come by another time.**

### Pre-Determiners

Pre-determiners are placed before an indefinite article + adjective + noun to show an opinion about the modified noun. Such and what is used as Pre-Determiners.

Important: "Pre-determiners” को “Indefinite article” से पहले रखा जाता है ।

**For Example**

* **What a lovely day!**
* **She's such a kind woman.**
* **You can't imagine what an incredible movie I just watch.**
* **I've had such a good time yesterday!**
* **It was quite a nice day.**
* **He's had quite a bad day today.**
* **It's rather a small phone.**
* **I've just met rather a wise man.**
* **It was such a nice day.**
* **What a bad day today.**
* **It's rather a small phone.**
* **He is such a wise man.**

## WH Family

The “5 w’s” and one “h” is the member of this family which are Who, What, When, Where, Why and how are the members of this family. These words are used in interrogative and conjunctions sentences.

Important: “WH family members” का उपयोग पूछताछ और संयुग्मन वाक्यों में किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **Who are you?**
* **What are you doing?**
* **When did you come?**
* **Where do you live?**
* **Why did you do this?**
* **How is this possible?**

### Use of Who

Who is used to question the identity of the person in any sentences?

Important: “Who” का उपयोग वाक्य के व्यक्ति की पहचान पूछने के लिए किया जाता है। क्रिया या पूर्वसर्ग की वस्तु का संदर्भ देते समय भी “Who” का किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **Who are you?**
* **Who’s next?**
* **Who is helping you?**
* **Who makes the decisions here?**
* **Who lives here?**
* **Who doesn’t live here?**
* **You are the boy who has won the match?**
* **The phone doorbell rings. He asked me who it was.**
* **Can you tell me who I should talk to?**
* **I can remember who told me.**

### Use of Why

Why is used to ask the reason or expiration of any action or to show shock, surprise, indirect questions, response or reply to a negative statement in a sentence.

Important: किसी कार्रवाई का कारण या अभिव्यक्ति पूछने या वाक्यों में आघात और आश्चर्य दिखाने के लिए “Why” का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **Why not?**
* **Why?**
* **Why is that?**
* **Why did he leave home?**
* **Why are you doing this?**
* **Why didn’t you tell the truth?**
* **Why is the sun round?**
* **He asked me why I wanted to leave early.**
* **I wonder why he told nobody he was going to Delhi.**
* **That’s why he’s taken holiday.**

### Use of What

“What” is used to ask information about actions or things and in indirect questions.

We also use “what” as a determiner and pronoun.

Important: हम चीजों और कार्यों के बारे में जानकारी के लिए “what” का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

**For Example**

* **What are you doing?**
* **What do you want?**
* **What’s she doing? Tell her to stop!**
* **What time are you coming?**
* **What is happening there?**
* **What lovely kid!**
* **What a horrible news!**
* **What a mess!**
* **I can’t decide what to buy Riya for her birthday.**
* **I haven’t got many T-shirts, but you can borrow what I have.**

### Use of When

“When” is used to ask the time of happening of any action or to ask indirect questions.

Important: किसी कार्रवाई के होने का समय पूछने के लिए “when” का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **When did you come?**
* **When are you going this weekend?**
* **When will you know that?**
* **When did the function begin?**
* **The police asked me when I last saw her.**
* **The body laughed when he saw his mother.**
* **I felt very happy when he comes.**
* **Shubham was up when I went to his room this morning.**
* **You hurt me when you pushed me from behind.**
* **Be careful when leaving home at night.**

### Use of Where

“Where” is used to ask information about the place or to ask indirect questions.

Important: "Where" का प्रयोग जगह की जानकारी पूछने के लिए किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **Where did you buy those pants?**
* **Where will you be working next week?**
* **I asked him where I could buy a dress.**
* **Can you tell me where she left the book?**
* **"Where's Rajat?" he called after her.**
* **Where is the baby house?**
* **This is a city where I was born.**
* **My home is where my family and friends are.**
* **I don't know where the Ashish is in this car.**
* **Do you know where the charger is for my laptop?**

### Use of How

“How” is used to ask questions about measurement, methods, amount or in direly and indirect questions.

Important: माप, विधियों, राशि के बारे में प्रश्न पूछने के लिए "How" का उपयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **How are you?**
* **How was the party? Was it as boring as you thought?**
* **Do you know how I can get to the airport?**
* **I asked her how he was but he didn’t answer me.**
* **How old is your grandmother?**
* **How often do you get to your cottage at weekends?**
* **How much does the average car cost these days?**
* **How fascinating!**
* **How beautifully they dance!**
* **How we love Delhi!**
* **I wonder how they do this.**

## There and It

1. **There**

There is used before the “verb to be” and “There” is used to introduce the subject in the sentences.

Important: वहाँ (There) का उपयोग वाक्यों में विषय को पेश करने के लिए किया जाता है

**For Example**

* **There is someone on the phone.**
* **There is a temple in the town.**
* **There was a storm last Sunday.**
* **There is plenty of rice left.**
* **There were fifty people at the party.**
* **Is there any problem?**
* **There was a nasty trash talk going on between them.**
* **There is truth to be said.**
* **What is over there?**
* **There are two people in the office right now.**
* **There is supposed to be a sunny day tomorrow.**
* **The blue one is their house.**
* **The Piku is their cat.**

1. **It**

There is used before the “verb to be” and “It” is a pronoun and used as a subject in the sentences.

Important: यह (It) एक सर्वनाम है और वाक्यों में एक विषय के रूप में उपयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* **It's time to go to school!**
* **It's my sister.**
* **What day is it?**
* **It is not old.**
* **It is time to run.**
* **It was stormy yesterday.**
* **It's nearly past mid-day.**
* **It's her birthday.**
* **It's a sunny day today.**
* **It's a lovely dress.**
* **It was getting cold.**
* **It's great living in Uttrakhand.**
* **It's nice to meet you, Raju.**

## Rules Of Adding ‘s/es’

1. **Some regular nouns can make plural by simply adding –s.**

**For Example :**

* Car - Cars
* Bag - Bags
* Table - Tables
* Boat - Boats
* House - Houses
* Cat- Cats
* Center – Centers

1. **If a word ends with‑s, ‑sh, ‑ch, ‑x, or –z then add –es in the last to make Plural.**

**For Example :**

* Class - Classes
* Bus – Buses
* Wash – Washes
* Batch - Batches
* Beach- Beaches
* Bench - Benches
* Branch - Branches
* Box – Boxes
* Buzz – Buzzes

1. **If a word ends with f or fe then change f or fe  to ves to make it Plural.**

**For Example:**

* Knife - Knives
* Life – Lives
* Wife - Wives
* Shelf – Shelves
* Sky - Skies
* Candy - Candies
* Lady - Ladies

Exceptions

* Roof – Roofs
* Proof – Proofs
* Chief – Chiefs

1. **If the word ends with a vowel (a, e,i,o,u) + y then just add s to make it Plural.**

**For Example:**

* Day- Days
* Boy - Boys,
* Donkey - Donkeys
* Journey – Journeys
* Key – Keys
* Tray – Trays

1. **If the word ends with a consonant + y then change y to ies to make it Plural.**

**For Example:**

* + - * country – countries
      * baby – babies
      * body – bodies
      * memory - memories

1. **If the word ends with o then add s to make it Plural.**

**For Example:**

* Radio – Radios
* Stereo – Stereos
* Video - Videos
* Kilo – Kilos
* Zero – Zeros
* Piano – Pianos
* Photo - Photos

Exception:

* + - * Hero – Heroes
      * Potato – Potatoes
      * Volcano – Volcanoes
      * Tomato - Tomatoes.

1. **Sometimes we change vowels, such as oo to ee or an to en to make it plural**

* Foot
* Feet
* Tooth
* Teeth
* Goose
* Geese
* Man
* Men
* Woman
* Women

1. **Irregular plurals - Sometimes words change it’s spelling differently to make it plural.**

* Mouse
* Mice
* Die
* Dice
* Oxen
* Child
* Children
* Person
* People

1. **Nouns which don’t change when made Plural**

* Sheep
* Fish
* Deer
* Moose
* Series
* Swine
* Cattle

## Rules Of Adding ‘ing’

1. **When a basic verb ends with "e", remove the "e" and add "-ing**".

**For example:**

* take + ing = taking
* make + ing = making
* dance + ing = dancing
* write + ing = writing
* bake + ing = baking
* smile + ing = smiling
* hope + ing = hoping
* fake + ing = faking

1. **When a basic verb ends with vowel + consonant, double the final consonant and add "-ing".**

**For example:**

* hit + ing = hitting
* stop + ing = stopping
* tab + ing = tabbing
* sob + ing = sobbing
* lap + ing = lappping
* beg + ing = begging
* nob + ing = nobbing
* put + ing = putting

1. **When a verb ends in vowel + consonant and put stress on the final syllable, double the consonant and add "-ing".**

**For example:**

* begin + ing = beginning
* run + ing = running
* stop + ing = stopping
* plan + ing = planning
* admit + ing = admitting
* commit + ing = committing
* refer + ing = referring

1. **When a verb ends in vowel + “L” and put double “L” the and add "-ing".**

**For example:**

* Travel + ing = Travelling
* Cancel +ing = cancelling
* Distil + ing = Distilling
* equal + ing = equalling
* Control + ing = controlling
* Propel + ing = propelling
* Compel + ing = compelling
* Fulfil + ing = fulfilling

1. **When a verb ends in “IE” then replace two vovels add“Y” and add "-ing".**

**For example:**

* Lie + ing = lying
* die +ing = dying
* tie + ing =lying
* vie + ing =vying

## Degree of comparison

As the name explain degree of comparision is used to compare the the person or thing to another.

Important: “Degree Of Comparision” का उपयोग तब किया जाता है जब हम एक व्यक्ति या एक चीज की दूसरे से तुलना करते हैं।

* There are three degree of comparison

**1. Positive degree.   
2. Comparative degree.   
3. Superlative degree.**

* 1. **Positive degree**

Positive degree is used when we compare one person or thing to another.

**For example :**

* He is short.
* He is smart.
* He is tall.
* She is beautifull.
* This flower is beautifull.
* That house is so big.
* Rahul is an intelligent boy.
* He is a strong boy.
* That is a huge tree.
* That dog is too fast.
* This house is not as big as that one.
* This flower is not as beautiful as that.
* He is not as intelligent as this boy.
* He is not as tall as raju.
  1. **Comparative degree.**

comparative degree is used when we compare two person or thing with each another.

**For example :**

* This flower pot is more beautiful than that.
* He is more intelligent than this man.
* This tree is bigger than that one.
* He is taller than raju.
* You are more polite than Shobhit.
* My sister is taller than I am, but he is older too.
* A rose is more beautiful than a lily.
* The Earth is larger than the mars.
* Learning hindi is more difficult than learning english.

Exception

When we compare two person or thing with each another.

We use all three degrees positive, comparative and superlative degree.

**For example :**

* This is the biggest tree in this street. (Superlative)   
  This tree is bigger than any other house in this street. (Comparative)   
  No other house in this street is as big as this one. (Positive)
* This flower pot is the most beautiful one in this garden. (Superlative)   
  This flower pot is more beautiful than any other flower in this garden. (Comparative)   
  No other flower pot in this garden is as beautiful as this one. (Comparative)
* He is the most intelligent student in this institute. (Superlative)   
  He is more intelligent than other student in the class. (Comparative)   
  No other boy is as intelligent as this boy. (Positive)
* He is the tallest boy in this gym. (Superlative)   
  He is taller than other boy in this gym. (Comparative)   
  No other boy is as tall as this boy. (Positive)   
  1. **Superlative degree.**

Superlative degree is used when we compare one thing with the group.

**For example :**

* I can't find my most comfortablet T-shirt.
* Russsia is the largest country in in the world.
* She is the smartest girl in our college.
* This is the most interesting noval I have ever read.
* I am the shortest student in my class.
* Palak is the least worried about the Exams.
* That was the best show ever.
* Abhinav is the most handsome boy in the whole college.
* Burj khilifa is the tallest building in the world.

## Prefix and Suffix

1. Prefix

As the heading explains prefix are the words add before the first alphabet of the word.

* Points to remember

1. Prefixes in English can have similar meanings

**For Example**

*un-, in-* and

*non-*  "not" or "opposite of."

*mis-* and *ir-* mean "wrong," "wrongly," or "incorrectly."

1. Double letters are possible in prefix.

**For example**

*im-*  "immeasurable."

*un-* "unnoticeable."

1. Adding a prefix to a word, the spelling of the base word never changes.

**For example**

*un-*  "unhappy."

*re-*  "relive."

1. Words that look like they contain prefixes but, they do not.

**For example**

*un-*  "uncle"

*re-*  "reach" or "real."

| **Prefix** | **Examples** |
| --- | --- |
| de- | decode, decrease |
| dis- | disagree, disappear |
| ex- | exhale, explosion |
| il- | illegal, illogical |
| im- | impossible, improper |
| in- | inaction, invisible |
| mis- | mislead, misplace |
| non- | nonfiction, nonsense |
| pre- | prefix, prehistory |
| pro- | proactive, profess, program |
| re- | react, reappear |
| un- | undo, unequal, unusual |

1. Suffix

As the heading explains suffix are the words add after the last alphabet of the word.

* Points to remember

1. Some suffixes have more than one meaning.

**For example**

*-er* may show a person who is doing an action, like a teach*er*. But "er" is also commonly added to the ends of adjectives and adverbs. "faster" and "stronger."

1. The spelling of a word can be change when we add suffix.

**For example**

Write = writing,

Make = making

Manage = managing.

| **Suffix** | **Examples** |
| --- | --- |
| -able | comfortable, portable |
| -al | annual comical |
| -er | bigger, stronger |
| -est | strongest, tiniest |
| -ful | beautiful, grateful |
| -ible | reversible, terrible |
| -ily | eerily, happily, lazily |
| -ing | acting, showing |
| -less | friendless, tireless |
| -ly | clearly, hourly |
| -ness | kindness, wilderness |
| -y | glory, messy, victory |

## Synonyms and Antonyms

* List of Synonyms and Antonyms

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Words** | **Synonyms** | **Antonyms** |
| Abolish | Abrogate, annual | Setup Establish |
| Abound | Flourish, proliferate | Deficient, Destitute |
| Adversity | Misfortune, calamity | Prosperity, Fortune |
| Alien | Foreigner, outsider | Native, Resident |
| Audacity | Boldness, Courage | Mildness, Cowardice |
| Authentic | Accurate, credible | Fictitious, unreal |
| Awkward | Rude, blundering | Adroit, clever |
| Brittle | Breakable, crisp | Tough, Enduring |
| Barbarous | Frustrate, perplex | Civilized |
| Barrier | Barricade, Obstacle | Link, Assistance |
| Base | Vulgar, Coarse | Summit, Noble |
| Batty | Insane, silly | Sane |
| Bind | Predicament | Release |
| Blunt | Dull, Insensitive | Keen, Sharp |
| Bold | Adventurous | Timid |
| Busy | Active, Engaged | Idle, Lazy |
| Calculating | Canny, Devious | Artless, honest |
| Calamity | adversity, misfortune | Fortune |
| Capable | competent, able | Incompetent, Inept |
| Captivity | imprisonment, confinement | Freedom, Liberty |
| Cease | terminate, desist | Begin, Originate |
| Compassion | kindness, sympathy | Cruelty, Barbarity |
| Comprise | include, contain | Reject, lack |
| Consequence | effect, outcome | Origin, Start |
| Calm | Harmonious, unruffled | Stormy, turbulent |
| Catholic | Generic, liberal | Narrow- minded |
| Celebrated | Acclaimed, lionized | Unknown, Inglorious |
| Cement | Plaster, mortar | Disintegrate |
| Cheap | Competitive, Inexpensive | Dear, unreasonable |
| Classic | Simple, Typical | Romantic, Unusual |
| Comic | Clown, Jester | Tragic, tragedian |
| Compact | Bunched, thick | Loose, Diffuse |
| Compress | Abbreviate, Shrink | Amplify, Expand |
| Confident | Bold, Undaunted | Diffident, cowardly |
| Creation | Formation, foundation | Destruction |
| Cunning | Acute, Smart | Nave, Coarse |
| Deceit | deception, artifice | Veracity, Sincerity |
| Deliberate | cautious, intentional | Rash, Sudden |
| Demolish | Ruin, devastate | Repair, construct |
| Dense | Opaque, piled | Sparse, brainy |
| Destructive | Catastrophic, pernicious | Creative, Constructive |
| Dwarf | Diminutive, Petite | Huge, Giant |
| Eclipse | Diminution, Dimming | Shine, eclipse |
| Endeavour | undertake, aspire | Cease, quit |
| Fabricate | construct, produce | Destroy, Dismantle |
| Ferocious | cruel, fierce | Gentle, Sympathetic |
| Feud | strife, quarrel | Harmony, fraternity |
| Fragile | weak, infirm | Enduring, Tough |
| Gather | Converge, huddle | Disperse, Dissemble |
| Gorgeous | magnificent, dazzling | Dull, unpretentious |
| Gracious | courteous, beneficent | Rude, Unforgiving |
| Genuine | Absolute, Factual | Spurious |
| Glory | Dignity, renown | Shame, Disgrace |
| Hapless | unfortunate, ill-fated | Fortunate, Lucky |
| Harass | irritate, molest | Assist, comfort |
| Harmony | Conformity, Amicability | Discord, discord |
| Honor | Adoration, Reverence | Denunciation, Shame |
| Humble | Meek, Timid | Proud, Assertive |
| Humility | Resignation, Fawning | Boldness, Pride |
| Impenitent | Uncontrite, Obdurate | Repentant |
| Impulsive | Flaky, Impetuous | Cautious, Deliberate |
| Indifferent | Equitable, Haughty | Partial, Biased |
| Interesting | Enchanting, Riveting | Dull, Uninteresting |
| Immense | huge, enormous | Puny, Insignificant |
| Immunity | prerogative, privilege | Blame, Censure |
| Impair | diminish, deteriorate | Restore, Revive |
| Impartial | just, unbiased | Prejudiced, Biased |
| Incompetent | inefficient, unskilled | Dexterous, Skilled |
| Ingenuous | undisguised, naive | Wily, Craftly |
| Invincible | unconquerable, impregnable | Effeminate, languid |
| Irrepressible | irresistible, unconfined | Composed, hesitant |
| Just | honest, impartial | Unequal, unfair |
| Justify | defend, exculpate | Impute, arraign |
| Keen | sharp, poignant | Vapid, insipid |
| Knell | death knell, last blow | Reconstruction, rediscovery |
| Knotty | complicated difficult | Simple, manageable |
| Lavish | abundant, excessive | Scarce, deficient |
| Liable | accountable, bound | Unaccountable, apt to |
| Liberal | magnanimous, generous | Stingy, malicious |
| Lucid | sound, rational | Obscure, hidden |
| Lunacy | delusion, insanity | Normalcy, sanity |
| Luscious | palatable, delicious | Unsavory, tart |
| Malice | Vengefulness, grudge | Goodwill, Kindness |
| Mandatory | Imperative, requisite | Optional |
| Merit | Stature, Asset | Demerit, dishonor |
| Modest | humble, courteous | Arrogant, pompous |
| Munificent | liberal, hospitable | Frugal, penurious |
| Mutual | joint, identical | Separate, distinct |
| Nimble | prompt, brisk | Sluggish, languid |
| Numerous | profuse, various | Scarce, deficient |
| Obstruct | impede, prevent | Hasten, encourage |
| Obtain | Access, Inherit | Forfeit |
| Obvious | Evident, apparent | Obscure, ambiguous |
| Offensive | Abhorrent, obnoxious | Engaging, fascinating |
| Occult | latent, ambiguous | Intelligible, transparent |
| Offspring | descendant, sibling | Ancestor, forefather |
| Optimist | Idealist | Pessimist |
| Oracular | cryptic, vague | Lucid, distinct |
| Outbreak | eruption, insurrection | Compliance, subjection |
| Outrage | offence, maltreatment | Praise, favour |
| Pacify | Appease, Chasten | Irritate, worsen |
| Progress | Pace, Betterment | Retrogress, worsening |
| Prompt | Precise, Punctual | Slow, Negligent |
| Pamper | Flatter, indulge | Deny, disparage |
| Paramount | foremost, eminent | Trivial, inferior |
| Placid | tranquil, calm | Turbulent, hostile |
| Precarious | doubtful, insecure | Assured |
| Raid | Incursion, Foray | Retreat, release |
| Rapidity | Quickness, Velocity | Inertia, languidity |
| Reason | Acumen, Bounds | Folly, Speculation |
| Redeem | Recover, liberate | Conserve lose |
| Ruthless | Remorseless, inhumane | Compassionate, lenient |
| Sacred | Cherish, Divine | Ungodly, Profane |
| Savage | Wild, untamed | Polished, Civilized |
| Startled | Frightened, Shocked | Waveringly |
| Stranger | Immigrant, guest | Acquaintance, national |
| Sublime | Magnificent, eminent | Ridiculous |
| Sympathy | Tenderness, harmony | Antipathy, Discord |
| System | Scheme, Entity | Chaos, Disorder |
| Sarcastic | Ironical, derisive | Courteous, gracious |
| Stain | blemish, tarnish | Honor, purify |
| Spurious | Fake, Counterfeit | Genuine, Authentic |
| Spry | Nimble, Brisk | Lethargic, Sluggish |
| Successful | Propitious, Felicitous | Destitute, Untoward |
| Substantial | Considerable, solid | Tenuous, fragile |
| Taboo | Prohibit, ban | Permit, consent |
| Temperate | Cool, moderate | Boisterous, violent |
| Tame | Compliant, Subdued | Wild, untamed |
| Thick | Chunky, massive | Thin, attenuated |
| Transparent | Diaphanous | Opaque |
| Tremble | Vibrate | Steady |
| Uncouth | Awkward, ungraceful | Elegant, Compensate |
| Vanity | Conceit, pretension | Modesty, Humility |
| Venerable | Esteemed, honored | Unworthy, immature |
| Venom | Poison, malevolence | Antidote, Benevolent |
| Waive | Relinquish, remove | Impose, Clamp |
| Wane | Decline, Dwindle | Ameliorate, Rise |
| Wary | cautious, circumspect | Heedless, negligent |
| Wed | marry, combine | Divorce, Separate |
| Wield | Exert, employ | Forgo, avoid |
| Yell | shout, shriek | Whisper muted |
| Yield | surrender abdicate | Resist, protest |
| Yoke | connect, harness | Liberate, Release |
| Zeal | eagerness, fervor | Apathy, lethargy |
| Zig -zag | oblique, wayward | Straight, unbent |

## Sentence Making

* **Structure of Sentence**

Sentences have two main parts: Subject and Predicates

Page 33 of new light

Sentences are structure as Subject+Verb+ Object format.

**For Example  
 I like mango.**

Here ‘**I’** is a ‘**Subject’, ‘like’** is a **‘Verb’** and **‘mango’** is an ‘**Object’**.

**You eat pizza.**

**‘You’** is a ‘**Subject**, ‘**eat’** is a **‘Verb’** and ‘**pizza’** is an ‘**Object’**.

* **Types of Sentences**

There are five basic types of sentences:

1. **Simple (or) Declarative**– A declarative sentence makes a statement. A declarative sentence ends with a period**. For Example:**

* **The dog is barking.**
* **The train from Delhi will arrive on time.**

1. **Command (or) Imperative**– An imperative sentence gives a command or request

. **For Example:**

* **Close the door**
* **Please keep quite**

1. **Question (or) Interrogative**– An interrogative sentence asks a question. An interrogative sentence ends with a question mark. **For Example:**

* **Is it raining?**
* **When will you be coming back from Dubai?**

1. **Exclamatory**– An exclamatory sentence shows strong feeling. An exclamatory sentence ends with an exclamation mark.**For Example:**
   * + **The theater is on fire!**
     + **Alas! She is dead.**
2. **Negative** – A negative sentence is a sentence that states that something is false. In English, we create negative sentences by adding the word 'not' after the auxiliary or helping, verb. An **Example** of an auxiliary verb is the helping verb 'be.' There are different forms that 'be' takes, including 'am,' 'is,' 'are,' 'was,' and 'were.'Is it raining? **For Example:**
   * + **David is not a happy person.**
     + **The clouds were not blocking the sun's rays.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Sentence Types** | **Example** |
| **1. Simple (or) Declarative Sentence** | The dog went to the county fair. |
| She saw the dog eat popcorn. |
| Dogs don’t usually eat popcorn. |
| The popcorn was hot. |
| I like popcorn. |
|  |  |
| **2. Command (or) Imperative** | Have fun at the fair! (Expressing a wish) |
| Come to the fair with me! (Sharing an invitation) |
| Feed the dog once per day. (Giving instructions) |
| Please don’t give the dog popcorn. (Sharing a request) |
| Stop feeding the dog! (Giving a demand) |
|  |  |
| **3. Question (or) Interrogative** | Who cooks fresh popcorn around here? |
| Where can I buy fresh popcorn? |
| What is the best flavor of popcorn? |
| When do you usually eat popcorn? |
| Why do you let your dog eat popcorn? |
| How is it? |
|  |  |
| **4. Exclamatory** | I can’t believe how fast the dog ran to the county fair! |
| Wow, he must really love popcorn! |
| That popcorn isn’t for dogs! |
|  |  |
| **5. Negative** | Paul did **not** call me yesterday |
| Jennie has **no** money |
| I **rarely** go to the gym after work |
|  |  |

## Vocabulary

### Vegetable

### Fruits

### Daily Word

### Horoscope

### Homophones

## Verb to be

The “verb to be” is the fundamental verbs in the English grammar they are used as the main verb as well as helping verb. Verb to be acts differently in affirmative sentences, negative sentences and in questions. “Verb to be” is also known as Linking verb. It does not describe as an action

Important: - "Verb to be "अंग्रेजी व्याकरण की मौलिक क्रिया है जो मुख्य क्रिया और सहायक क्रिया के रूप में उपयोग कीजाते हैं। ये क्रिया, सकारात्मक वाक्यों, नकारात्मक वाक्यों और   
प्रशनसूचक वाकियो मे विभिन्न प्रकार से कार्य करती है।

* Verb to be as a main verb

The verb to be is the Basic verb used to show the existence of an entity (person, object, abstraction) or the relation of an entity to itscharacteristics. orqualities.

**For Example**

* That man is my doctor.

वहआदमीमेराडॉक्टरहै।

* He is an respected man .

वहएकसम्मानितव्यक्तिहैं।

* Verb to be as auxiliary

The verb to be is used as an auxiliary verb .it is used to show the prospective or continuity of an action.

**For Example**

* They have been living in Delhi.

वे दिल्ली में रह रहे हैं।

* He has been teaching english.

वह अंग्रेजी पढ़ा रहा है।

* The meaning of verb to be

1. Exists

Verb to be verb is used to show existence of an entity.

For example

* There i a book on the table.

वहाँ मेज पर एक किताब है।

* This is a book.

यह एक पुस्तक है।

1. Hapenes

Verb to be verb is used to show happening of an action.

For example

* We are fighting.

हम लड़ रहे हैं।

* Party is tomorrow.

कल पार्टी हे।

1. Location

Verb to be verb is used to tell the location of any person or object.

For example

* She is in the school.

वह स्कूल में है।

* There is a book under the table  
  टेबलकेनीचेएककिताबहै।

1. Show identity

Verb to be verb is used to show the identity of any person or object.

For example

* I am a doctor.

मैं एक डॉक्टर हूँ।

* This is a book.

यह एक पुस्तक है।

1. Show quality

Verb to be verb is used to tell the quality of any person or object.

For example

* We are brave.

हम बहादुर हैं।

* She is beautiful.

वह सुंदर है।

* Forms

The verb to be has the eight forms in English grammar.

* **Am–** Present simple tense
* **Is –** Present simple tense
* **Are –** Present simple tense
* **Was –** Past simple tense
* **Were –** Past simple tense
* **Be –** Base form
* **Being –** Present participle
* **Been –**Past participle
* Structure of sentences

1. Affirmative form (Positive)

Subject +Verb to be + object

For example

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Subject | Verb to be | objective |
| I | am | Student |
| You | are | Student |
| He /She/It | is | Student |
| We | are | Student |
| they | are | Student |

1. Negative form

Subject +Verb to be + not+ object

**For Example**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Verb to be** | **Not** | **objective** |
| I | am | not | Student |
| You | are | not | Student |
| He /She/It | is | not | Student |
| We | are | not | Student |
| They | are | not | Student |

1. Interrogative form(Question)

Verb to be +Subject + object?

**For Example**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Verb to be | Subject | objective |
| am | I | Student |
| are | You | Student |
| is | He /She/It | Student |
| are | We | Student |
| are | they | Student |

1. Interrogative negative form

Verb to be +Subject +not + object?

**For Example**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Verb to be** | **Subject** | **Not** | **objective** |
| am | I | not | Student |
| are | You | not | Student |
| is | He /She/It | not | Student |
| are | We | not | Student |
| are | they | not | Student |

### UsesOf Is

* “Is” indicates present tenses
* “Is” is used with “He” ,“she”, “name (Ram)”or“singular noun(it, this)”
* “Is” is used to indicate singular noun.

Important :- IS "प्राथमिक सहायक क्रिया" के रूप में वर्गीकृत किया गया है जिसका अर्थ है कि यह मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में या वाक्य में सहायक क्रिया के रूप में कार्य कर सकतीहै।“Is” का उपयोग वर्तमान काल में किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* He is a singer.

वह एक गायक है।

* She is a singer.

वह एक गायिका है।

* Ram is a singer.

राम एक गायक हैं।

* It is a library.

यह एक पुस्तकालय है।

* This is a book.

यह एक पुस्तक है।

* She is not a doctor.

वह चिकित्सक नहीं है।

* He is not a doctor.

वह एक डाक्टर नहीं है।

* Rohit is not a doctor.

रोहित डॉक्टर नहीं है।

* It is not a library.

यह एक पुस्तकालय नहीं है।

* This is not a book.

यह कोई किताब नहीं है।

* Is it a book?

क्या यह एक पुस्तक है?

* Is he a doctor?

क्या वह चिकित्सक है?

* Is she a doctor?

क्या वह चिकित्सक है?

* Is this a book?

क्या यह एक पुस्तक है?

* Is Rohit a doctor?

क्या रोहित डॉक्टर है?

* Is he not a doctor?

क्या वह डॉक्टर नहीं है?

* Is she not a doctor?

क्या वह डॉक्टर नहीं है?

* Is this not a book?

क्या यह किताब नहीं है?

* Is Rohit not a doctor?

क्या रोहित डॉक्टर नहीं है?

### Uses Of Are

* “Are” indicates present tenses.
* “Are” is only used with “we”, “you”, “they “and “any plural noun(children, those people)”
* “Are” is used with plural noun.

Important :- Are "प्राथमिक सहायक क्रिया" के रूप में वर्गीकृत किया गया है जिसका अर्थ है कि यह मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में या वाक्य में सहायक क्रिया के रूप में कार्य कर सकतीहै।“Are” का उपयोग वर्तमान काल में किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* We are solders.

हम सिपाही हैं।

* They are solders.

वे सिपाही हैं।

* Those Peoples are solders.

वे लोग सिपाही हैं।

* We are brave.

हम बहादुर हैं।

* We are fighting.

हम लड़ रहे हैं।

* We are there.

हम वहाँ हैं।

* We are to get the award.

हमें पुरस्कार मिलना है।

* We are respected.

हम सम्मानित हैं।

* We are to be followed.

हमारा पालन किया जाना है।

* We are not solders.

हम सिपाही नहीं हैं।

* You are not solders.

आप सिपाही नहीं हैं।

* They are not solders.

वे सिपाही नहीं हैं।

* Are we solders.

क्या हम सिपाही हैं?

* Are we not solders?

क्या हम सिपाही नहीं हैं?

* Are you not solders?

क्या तुम सिपाही नहीं हो?

* Are they not solders?

क्या वे सिपाही नहीं हैं?

### Uses Of Am

* “Am” indicates present tenses.
* “Am” is only used with “I”.
* We can use “am” when we talk about identity.

Important :- Am "प्राथमिक सहायक क्रिया" के रूप में वर्गीकृत किया गया है जिसका अर्थ है कि यह मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में या वाक्य में सहायक क्रिया के रूप में कार्य कर सकतीहै।“Am” का उपयोग वर्तमान काल में किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* I am a doctor.

मैं एक डॉक्टर हूँ।

* I am a teacher.

मैं एक शिक्षक हूं।

* I am a student.

मैं एक छात्र हूँ।

* **I am not a teacher**.

मैं अध्यापक नहीं हुँ।

* I am not a doctor.

मैं एक चिकित्सक नहीं हूँ।

* I am not a student.

मैं एक छात्र नहीं हूं।

* Am I a doctor?

क्या मैं एक डॉक्टर हूं?

* Am I a student?

क्या मैं एक विधार्थी हूँ?

* Am I a teacher?

क्या मैं शिक्षकहूं?

* Am I not doctor?

क्या मैं डॉक्टर नहीं हूँ?

* Am I not a teacher?

क्या मैं शिक्षक नहीं हूं?

* Am I not a student?

क्या मैं छात्र नहीं हूं?

**EXERCISE :- 1 (Is, Am,Are)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“Is”, “Am”,”Are”)**

1. I …….. a boy.
2. My mother …….. at home.
3. Chink and Susi …….. my cats.
4. The rat …….. in the cage.
5. I …….. a dancer.
6. My pen …….. on the table.
7. Jatin and Prashant …….. good friends.
8. …….. you from Delhi?
9. His brother……..eight years old.
10. We …….. children.
11. My father …….. in the office.
12. The employes …….. not at company today.
13. Jonny's grandmother …….. from Uttrakhand.
14. I …….. a cricket fan.
15. It …….. Monday today.
16. They …….. in the truck.
17. His pencil case …….. at home.
18. …….. you from Goa?
19. I …….. not your friend.
20. Hey Rajat! We …….. here.
21. ‘Have you finished that Project?’ ‘I …….. working on it.’
22. The children …….. playing video games.
23. She …….. working in the kitchen.
24. The teacher…….. checking the answer sheets.
25. You can’t go out now. It …….. raining cats and dogs.

### Use of was

* “Was” indicates past tenses.
* “Was” is only used with “I”,”he”,”she”, “name”,”any singular noun or pronoun (car, it)”.

Important:- “Was”का उपयोग भूत काल में किया जाता है ।“Was”का उपयोग संज्ञा की स्थिति दिखाने के लिए भी किया जाता है, या अन्य क्रियाओं के संबंध में एक क्रिया के रूप में उपयोग किया जाता है।

**For Example**

* He was an officer.

वह एक अधिकारी थे।

* He was working.

वह काम कर रहा था।

* He was in Delhi.

वह दिल्ली में था।

* He was here.

वह यहाँ था।

* He was been loved.

उसे प्यार हो गया था।

* He was sincere.

वह ईमानदार था।

* He was about to win.

वह जीतने वाला था।

* He was respected.

उनका सम्मान किया गया।

* He was not an officer.

वह कोई अधिकारी नहीं था।

* He was not working.

वह काम नहीं कर रहा था।

* He was not brave.

वह बहादुर नहीं था।

* Was he an officer?

क्या वह एक अधिकारी थे?

* Was he a teacher?

क्या वह शिक्षक थे?

* Was he a student?

क्या वह एक छात्र था?

* Was he not an officer?

क्या वह अधिकारी नहीं थे?

* Was he not a teacher?

क्या वह शिक्षक नहीं थे?

* Was he not a student?

क्या वह छात्र नहीं थे?

### Use of were

* “Were” indicates past tenses.
* “Was” is only used with “we”, “you”,”they”, “name”,”any plural noun (children)”.

Important:- “Were”काउपयोगभूतकालमेंकियाजाताहै ।“Were”काउपयोगसंज्ञाकीस्थितिदिखानेकेलिएभीकियाजाताहै, याअन्यक्रियाओंकेसंबंधमेंएकक्रियाकेरूपमेंउपयोगकियाजाताहै।

**For Example**

* We were teacher.

हम शिक्षक थे।

* We were at home.

हम घर पर थे।

* We were there.

हम वहां थे।

* We were learning.

हम सीख रहे थे।

* We were sincere.

हम ईमानदार थे।

* We were to get first prize.

हमें पहला पुरस्कार मिलना था।

* We were student.

हम छात्र थे।

* We were doctors.

हम डॉक्टर थे।

* We were not teacher.

हम शिक्षक नहीं थे।

* We were not doctors.

हम डॉक्टर नहीं थे।

* We were not students.

हम छात्र नहीं थे।

* Were we teachers?

क्या हम शिक्षक थे?

* Were we students

क्या हम छात्र थे?

* Were we not doctors?

क्या हम डॉक्टर नहीं थे?

* Were not we teachers.

क्या हम शिक्षक नहीं थे?

* Were not we doctors?

क्या हम डॉक्टर नहीं थे?

* Were we not students?

क्या हम छात्र नहीं थे?

**EXERCISE :- 2(was,were)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“Was”, “were”)**

1. Rohit ……..not in my class.
2. Abhinav and sidharth……..so glad to see me.
3. My bike……..very fast.
4. I ……..a dancer in the movie.
5. Your teacher ……..from delhi.
6. …….. This her phone?
7. Our neighbor's kids…….. Really sweet.
8. Not all my friends……..at my birthday party.
9. Our doctor…….. Very kind.
10. The manager…….. So rude.
11. His uncle ……..very poor.
12. ……..the exams hard?
13. John and Rajat …….. Not here yesterday.
14. The children……..so tired after the party.
15. The news ……..very upsetting.
16. What …….. you doing at 6’O clock in the morning?
17. I …….. sleeping when the telephone rang.
18. When you phoned, I …….. working in the office.
19. When I got up this morning the sun……..shining.
20. I …….. Playing all day yesterday.
21. I ……..  in Uttrakhand last spring.
22. We …….. at home last Saturday.
23. Renu ……..  at school yesterday.
24. You …….. Very busy on Saturday.
25. They …….. in front of the Bus stop.

### Uses Of Be

* “Be” is always used in present or future tense.

Important:- “**Be”**क्रिया का पहला रूप है**,**इसे “**to”**के बाद प्रयोग करते है।

**For Example**

* Be a good student.

एक अच्छे छात्र बनो।

* You will be ok.

तुम ठीक हो जाओगे।

* Don’t be angry.

नाराज मत होना।

* She must be sick.

वह बीमार होना चाहिए।

* I will be there at time.

मैं समय पर वहाँ पहुँच जाऊँगा।

* That will be fine.

वह ठीक होगा।

* He must be honest.

वह ईमानदार होना चाहिए।

* Be quite for a moment.

एक पल के लिए काफी रहो।

* You go, I will be at home.

तुम जाओ, मैं घर पर रहूंगा।

* I don’t want to be doctor.

मैं डॉक्टर नहीं बनना चाहता।

* I don’t want to be poor.

मैं गरीब नहीं होना चाहता।

* **Don’t be sad**.

दुखी मत होना।

* Do you want to be a doctor?

क्या आप डॉक्टर बनना चाहते हैं?

* Don’t to be so dumb.

इतना गूंगा मत बनो।

* Don’t you want to be a doctor?

क्या आप डॉक्टर नहीं बनना चाहते हैं?

### Uses Of Being

* “Being” shows two quality of a person in a single sentence.
* “Being” is used with “am”, “are”, or “was”, “were”.

**Important :- “Being” be** का ही एक रूप है**,**जो तब प्रयोग मे आता है जब कार्य चल रहा हो।

**For Example**

* Being an Indian, I love my country.

एक भारतीय होने के नाते, मैं अपने देश से प्यार करता हूं।

* Being a proofreader, he corrected most of my mistake.

एक प्रूफ़रीडर होने के नाते, उन्होंने मेरी अधिकांश गलती को सुधारा।

* Being a teacher, he is very good in English.

एक शिक्षक होने के नाते, वह अंग्रेजी में बहुत अच्छा है।

* Being a photographer, he has a good knowledge of camera.

एक फोटोग्राफर होने के नाते उन्हें कैमरे की अच्छी जानकारी है।

* Not being good at English, he often scoreless marks in it.  
  अंग्रेजी में अच्छा नहीं होने के कारण, वह अक्सर कम अंक प्राप्त करता है।
* Not being good in photographer, he can’t take good photos.

फ़ोटोग्राफ़र में अच्छा नहीं होने के कारण, वह अच्छी तस्वीरें नहीं ले सकता।

* Being a photo photographer, why don’t you take good photos?

एक फोटोग्राफर होने के नाते, आप अच्छी तस्वीरें क्यों नहीं लेते हैं?

* Being a teacher, Why you are not good in English.

एक शिक्षक होने के नाते, आप अंग्रेजी में अच्छे क्यों नहीं हैं।

* Being a teacher, he not good at games.

एक शिक्षक होने के नाते, वह खेलों में अच्छा नहीं है।

* Being an Indian, don’t you respect your country?

एक भारतीय होने के नाते, क्या आप अपने देश का सम्मान नहीं करते हैं?

* Raj! Stop being silly and sit down!

राज! चुप रहना और बैठ जाना!

### Uses Of Been

* Been is use to talk about time. The past and present together.
* “Been “is used with “have”, “has”, or “had”.

**Important:- “Been”** भूतकाल कि बात करता है**,**ये “**be”**का ही रूप है इसे “**have/has** and **had”**के बादप्रयोग करते है।

**For Example**

* I have been waiting since 9am.

मैं सुबह9बजे से इंतजार कर रहा हूं।

* I have been the teacher of this school for 5 years.

मैं5 ल से इस स्कूल का शिक्षक हूसा।।

* She has not been a popular dancer.

वह एक लोकप्रिय नर्तकी नहीं रही हैं।

* It has been a complicated problem.

यह एक जटिल समस्या रही है।

* These have been very naughty children.

ये बहुत शरारती बच्चे रहे हैं।

* He has been my best friend.

वह मेरा सबसे अच्छा दोस्त रहा है।

* He has been teaching english.

वह अंग्रेजी पढ़ा रहा है।

* They have been living in Delhi.

वे दिल्ली में रह रहे हैं।

* They have been eating.

वे खाते रहे हैं।

* They have not been living in Delhi.

वे दिल्ली में नहीं रह रहे हैं।

* They have been dancing.

वे नाच रहे हैं।

* The book has been on the table for a very long time.

पुस्तक बहुत लंबे समय से मेज पर है।

* He has been sleeping.

वह सो रहा है।

* He has been with me from a very long time.

वह बहुत लंबे समय से मेरे साथ हैं।

* He has not been teaching English.

वह अंग्रेजी नहीं पढ़ा रहा है।

* Since when have you been here?

आप कब से यहाँ हैं?

* Since when have you been dancing?

कब से नाच रहे हो?

* Since when have you been working?

आप कब से काम कर रहे हैं?

* For how long have you been in Delhi?

आप कितने समय से दिल्ली में हैं?

* For how long have you been reading?

आप कितने समय से पढ़ रहे हैं?

**EXERCISE :- 3(Be ,Being, Been)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“Be”, “Being”,”Been”)**

1. I will always …….. there for you!
2. Johnny has always …….. a very naughty child.
3. Johnny! Stop …….. silly and sit down!
4. I have ……..waiting for you for a long time!
5. The criminal will …….. caught and executed.
6. How have you …….. recently?
7. …….. a lawyer is not easy!
8. …….. friendly to everyone you meet!
9. It's …….. Nice knowing you!
10. …….. old means you have plenty of aches and pains.
11. How long have you …….. learning English?
12. We look forward to …….. invited.
13. Everyone hates …….. lied to. That’s why she is angry.
14. Tom may …….. at home or perhaps at school.
15. Has there ever …….. a war in your country?
16. I am not a perfect human ……... None of us are.
17. He wants to …….. a teacher. Not a nurse.
18. My sister has …….. in England for five months.
19. The clothes are …….. washed right now.
20. Children oughtn't to …….. given alcohol.
21. **1. You have** …….. **very helpful this week.**
22. **The children have not** …….. **naughty.**
23. **3. The film is** …….. **shown in 3D in all cinemas.**
24. **All Sarah’s paintings are** …….. **sold**
25. He should …….. at home.

* Table of verb to be

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| When? | Who? | Form | Example |
| Base form |  | be | He can **be** Docter. |
| Simple Present | I | am | I **am**  Docter. |
| You | are | You **are**  Docter. |
| He/She/It | is | She **is**  Docter. |
| We | are | We **are**  Docters. |
| They | are | They **are**  Docters. |
| Simple Past | I | was | I **was**  Docter . |
| You | were | You **were**  Docter. |
| He/She/It | was | She **was**  Docter. |
| We | were | We **were**  Docter. |
| They | were | They **were**  Docter. |
| Simple Future | I | will be | I **will be** Docter. |
| You | will be | You **will be** Docter. |
| He/She/It | will be | She **will be** Docter. |
| We | will be | We **will be** Docter. |
| They | will be | They **will be** Docter. |
| Progressive form |  | being | He is **being** funny. |
| Perfect from |  | been | It has **been** raining. |

* Answers of model verb exercise :-

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 1 (Is, Am, Are) | | | |
| 1. Am 2. Is 3. are 4. Is 5. Am 6. Is 7. Are | 1. Are 2. Is 3. Are 4. Is 5. Are 6. Is 7. Am | 1. is 2. are 3. is 4. are 5. am 6. are 7. am | 1. are 2. is 3. is 4. is |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 2 (Was, Were) | | | |
| 1. . was 2. were 3. was 4. was 5. was 6. Was | 1. were 2. were 3. was 4. was 5. was 6. Were | 1. were 2. were 3. was 4. were 5. was 6. was | 1. was 2. was 3. was 4. were 5. was 6. were 7. were |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 3 (Be, Being, Been) | | | |
| 1. Be 2. Been 3. Being 4. Been 5. Be 6. been | 1. being 2. be 3. been 4. being 5. been 6. being | 1. being 2. be 3. been 4. being 5. be 6. been | 1. being 2. be 3. been 4. been 5. being 6. being 7. be |

## Basic English Speaking

* Simple sentences sentences

1. **आप कैसे हैं?**

How r u?

1. **मैं ठीक हूँ।**

I am fine.

1. **क्या मैं अंदर आ सकता हूँ?**

May, I come in?

1. **तुम्हारा नाम क्या हे।**

What Is your name.

1. **मेरा नाम कपिल सैनी है।**

My name is Kapil Saini.

1. **मैं घर जा रही हूँ।**

I am going home.

1. **स्कूल जाओ।**

Go to school.

1. **मैं स्कूल नहीं जाना चाहता।**

I don’t want to go school.

1. **कल छुट्टी है।**

Tomorrow is holiday.

1. **कल सोमवार है।**

Tomorrow is Monday.

1. **कल होली है।**

Tomorrow is Holi.

1. **मैं बाद में फोन करूंगा।**

I will call u later.

1. **क्या आप दोहरा सकते हैं?**

Could you please repeat that?

1. **आप कैसे हैं?**

How do you do?

1. **इसका उल्लेख न करें।**

Don’t mention it.

1. **जाने दो।**

Let it go.

1. **कोई बात नहीं।**

That’s fine.

1. **अरम से करो।**

Just take it easy.

1. **इसे फिर से न करें।**

Don’t do it again.

1. **रहने भी दो। इससे कोई फर्क नहीं पड़ता**

Forget it. It doesn’t matter.

1. **यह ठीक होगा।**

That would be okay.

1. **इसके बारे में चिंता न करें।**

Don’t worry about it.

1. **ठीक है**

It’s okay

1. **मुझे कुत्ते पसंद है।**

I like dogs.

1. **मुझे खाना पकाना पसंद है।**

I love cooking.

1. **मुझेफुटबॉलखेलनापसंदहै।**

I enjoy playing football.

1. **मैं पिज्जा का दीवाना हूं।**

I’m crazy about pizza.

1. **मैं रॉक संगीत का शौकीन हूं।**

I’m fond of rock music.

1. **क्या आपको टेनिस पसंद है?**

 Do you like tennis?

1. **वादा करता हूँ कि मैं समय पर काम पूरा करूंगा।**

I promise that I will finish the job on time.

1. **मैं आपसे वादा करता हूं कि यह सच है।**

I promise you that that’s the truth.

1. **मैं कसम खाता हूं कि मैं तुम्हें कभी नहीं छोड़ूंगा।**

I swear I will never leave you.

1. **मैं कसम खाता हूं कि मैं आपको निराश नहीं किया।**

I swear I won’t let you down.

1. **मैं आपको विश्वास दिलाता हूं कि मैं कल सुबह किताब वापस करूंगा।**

I assure you that I will return the book tomorrow morning.

1. **मैं आपको विश्वास दिलाता हूं कि मैं समय पर पहुंचूंगा।**

I assure you that I will be there on time.

1. **मेरा विश्वास करो, मैं आपको निराश नहीं किया है।**

Believe me, I won’t make you disappointed.

1. **मेरा विश्वास करो।**

Trust me.

1. **मैं यह कर सकता हूं।**

I can do it.

1. **मुझे तुम पर विश्वास है।**

I believe you.

1. **ठीक है। अपना वादा निभाएं।**

All right. Keep your promise.

1. **मुझे उम्मीद है कि आप अपनी बात रखेंगे।**

I hope you will keep your words.

1. **बस समय जवाब देगा।**

Just let the time answer it.

1. **मेरा नाम सचिन है और मैं अंग्रेजी सीख रहा हूं।**

My name is Sachin and I’m learning English.

1. **कोई बात नहीं, मैं कल जाऊंगा।**

It’s okay, I’ll go tomorrow.

1. **क्या आप एक कप चाय पीना पसंद करेंगे?**

Would you like to have a cup of tea?

1. **एक छाता ले लो, बाहर बारिश हो रही है।**

Take an umbrella, it is raining outside.

1. **मुझे घर छोड़ने के लिए बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद।**

Thanks so much for dropping me home.

1. **जन्मदिन के उपहार के लिए बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद।**

Thanks so much for the birthday gifts.

1. **माफ़ कीजिए सर, आपने अपना बटुआ गिरा दिया।**

Excuse me sir, you dropped your wallet.

1. **क्षमा करें, क्या आप जानते हैं कि समय क्या हुआ है?**

Excuse me; do you know what time it is?

1. **मुझे इतनी देर होने का खेद है।**

I'm sorry for being so late.

1. **मुझे वास्तव में खेद है कि मैंने आपको पार्टी में आमंत्रित नहीं किया।**

I’m really sorry I didn’t invite you to the party.

1. **आपका मतलब क्या है?**

What do you mean?

1. **जहाँ तक मुझे पता है।**

As far as I know.

1. **आपसे मिलकर अच्छा लगा, काजल।**

Nice to meet you, Kajal.

1. **आपसे मिलकर भी अच्छा लगा।**

Nice to meet you too .

1. **आप कहां के निवासी हैं?**

Where are you from?

1. **मे भारत से हूं ।**

I’m from India.

1. **क्या आप उसकी देखभाल करेंगे?**

[Would you care for her?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/097-would-you-care-for/)

1. **आपका फ़ोन नंबर क्या है?**

What’s your phone number?

1. **में आपकी मदद कैसे कर सकता हूं?**

How can I help you?

1. **क्या आपने रिपोर्ट खत्म कर दी?**

Did you finish the reports?

1. **आपका पसंदीदा शौक पर क्या है?**

[What’s your favorite hobby?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/092-whats-your-favorite/)

1. **क्या आप वाकई मेरी मदद नहीं चाहते हैं?**

[Are you sure you don’t want my help?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/001-are-you-sure/)

1. **चाकू के साथ सावधानी बरते ।**

Be careful with knifes.

1. **क्या आप मेरी बात से सहमत हैं?**

[Do you agree with me?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/011-do-you-agree/)

1. **क्या तुम इसे मेरे घर में ले जाते हो?**

[Do you carry this in my home?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/012-do-you-carry-this-in/)

1. **क्या मए तुम्हारा पेन लाए सकता हु?**

Do you mind if I take your pen?

1. **क्या आपने कभी यह किया है?**

[Have you ever done this?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/017-have-you-ever/)

1. **अपनी सहायता कीजिये।**

Help yourself.

1. **ये कैसा रहेगा ?**

How about this?

1. **तुम्हारी हिम्मत कैसे हुई!**

[How dare you!](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/026-how-dare-you/)

1. **आपको किस तरह पसंद है?**

[How do you like?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/027-how-do-you-like/)

1. **इसमें कितना समय लगता है?**

[How long does it take?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/028-how-long-does-it-take/)

1. **मुझे यकीन है आप ऐसा नहीं कर सकते।**

[I bet](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/030-i-bet/) you can’t do this.

1. **मुझे शायद ही इस बात पर यकीन हो।**

I can hardly believe that.

1. **मैं आपकी मदद नहीं कर सकता।**

I can’t help you.

1. **में एक कप चय पीना चाहुगा।**

I’d like to have a cup of tea.

1. **मुझे नहीं पता ।**

I have no idea.

1. **मैं आपको बता दूंगा ।**

I’ll let you know that.

1. **मुझे कुत्तों के डर लगता है ।**

[I’m afraid](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/045-im-afraid/) of dogs.

1. **मैं अगले वर्षों की प्रगति के लिए तत्पर हूं।**

[I’m looking forward to](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/047-im-looking-forward-to/) next year’s progress.

1. **मैं इसके बारे में सोच रहा हूँ।**

I’m thinking about it.

1. **यह मेरी गलती है, कि हमें देर हो गई।**

It’s my fault, that we are late.

1. **यह आप पर निर्भर करता है।**

[It’s up to](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/057-its-up-to/) you.

1. **अब तुम्हारी बारी है।**

It’s your turn now.

1. **यह आपको आश्चर्यचकित कर सकता है।**

It may surprise you.

1. **मैं लिख रहा हूँ।**

I have been writing.

1. **मुझे आश्चर्य है कि, आप यहाँ हैं।**

I wonder if you are here.

1. **चाहे कूच भी हो, मैं तुम्हें प्यार करूंगा।**

No matter what I will love you.

1. **खेलने से बेहतर मुझे कुछ भी नहीं लगता ।**

There is nothing I like better than playing.

1. **मै आप के लिये क्य कर सक्त हु?**

[What can I do for you?](http://basicenglishspeaking.com/082-what-can-i-do-for-%ef%bc%9f/)

1. **आपका इसके बारे में क्या कहना हैं?**

What do you say about it?

1. **हाँ मैं जानता हूँ। बहुत समय हो गया।**

Yes I know. It’s been a long time.

1. **सप्ताहांत शुभ रहे।**

Have a nice weekend

1. **मैं इसे कहां छोड़ सकता हूं?**

Where can I leave this?

1. **तो आप यहाँ क्या करते हैं?**

So what do you do here?

1. **दोपहर का भोजन ले लो**

Let’s grab lunch.

1. **मैं पास में एक अच्छी जगह जानता हूं।**

I know a good place nearby.

1. **मैं अच्छा हूँ, लेकिन प्रस्ताव के लिए धन्यवाद।**

I’m good, but thanks for the offer.

1. **समय किसी के लिए नहीं रुकता।**

Time doesn’t stop for anyone.

1. **यह समय है।**

It’s time.

1. **मेरे पास समय नहीं है**

I don’t have time.

1. **हमारे पास ज्यादा समय नहीं है।**

We don’t have much time.

1. **समय पर आना ।**

Be on time.

1. **समय पर पहुंचें।**

Reach on time.

1. **मुझे आपके साथ समय बिताना पसंद है।**

I like to spend time with you.

1. **मैं समय से पहुंचूंगा।**

I will be on time.

1. **इसे खत्म करने के लिए आपके पास केवल24 घंटे हैं।**

You have only 24 hours to finish this.

1. **यह पर्याप्त समय नहीं है।**

It’s not enough time.

1. **मुझे कुछ और समय चाहिए।**

I want some more time.

1. **इसमें समय लगेगा।**

It will take time.

1. **आपके पास समय है।**

You have time.

1. **कुछ और समय लें।**

Take some more time.

1. **पर्याप्त समय लो।**

Take your time.

1. **मैं बहुत खुश हूं।**

I’m so happy.

1. **क्या बात है?**

What’s the matter?

1. **यह एक अच्छा विचार नहीं है।**

That doesn’t sounds like a good idea.

1. **ऐसा लगता है कि आप यहां नए हैं।**

It looks like you’re new here.

1. **ऐसा लगता है कि आप यहां नए हैं।**

It looks like you know what happened.

1. **हो सकता है कि वह इसका जवाब जानती हो।**

May be she knows the answer.

1. **मैं कहुगाकि यह अब 10 किलो से अधिक है।**

I’d say it’s over 10 killo now.

1. **अगर मुझे कोई अनुमान लगाना होता है, तो मैं कहता कि वह40वर्षका है।**

If I had to take a guess, I’d say he’s 40.

1. **शायद वह अपनी नौकरी छोड़ना चाहता है।**

Maybe he wants to quit his job.

1. **संभावना है कि आप इसे सही कर रहे हैं।**

Chances are you’re doing it right.

1. **वह इसके बारे में सही हो सकता है।**

He could be right about it.

1. **मुझे लगता है कि आपकी उम्र30 वर्ष से अधिक है।**

I guess you are over 30 years old.

1. **यह कहना मुश्किल है, लेकिन मुझे लगता है कि यह सबसे अच्छा अंग्रेजी पाठ्यक्रम है।**

It’s difficult to say, but I think this is the best English course.

1. **मुझे वास्तव में यकीन नहीं है, लेकिन मुझे लगता है कि यह शाम की आखिरी ट्रेन है।**

I’m not really sure, but I think this is the last evening train.

1. **मैं 4भाषाएं बोल सकता हूं।**

I can speak 4 languages.

1. **मैं 4किलोमीटर दौड़ सकता हूं।**

I can run 4 kilometers.

1. **मैं आपकी मदद नहीं कर सकता**

I can’t help you.

1. **मैं आपकी पार्टी में नहीं आ पाऊँगा।**

I won’t be able to come to your party.

1. **मैं आपको अगले सोमवार को मिलुंगा।**

I will be able to see you next monday.

1. **जब मैं अपना अध्ययन पूरा कर लूंगा, तो मैं एक अच्छी नौकरी पा सकूंगा।**

When I finish my study, I will be able to find a good job.

1. **जब मैं एक बच्चा था तो मैं बहुत अच्छी तरह से क्रिकेट खेल सकता था।**

When I was a child I could play cricket very well.

1. **उस दिन मैं उनसे मिलने नहीं गया था।**

I was not able to visit him that day.

1. **क्या आप बता सकते हैं कि रेलवे स्टेशन तक कैसे पहुंचा जाए?**

Could you tell me how to get to the railway station?

1. **क्या तुम उस आदमी को जानते हो?**

Do you know that man?

1. **क्या आप जानते हैं कि इस बाइक की कीमत कितनी है**

Do you know how much is this bike costs?

1. **मैं आपका नाम जानना चाहूंगा?**

I’d like to know your name.

1. **यह आपकी गलती है।**

It’s your fault.

1. **यह आपकी गलती है।**

It’s your mistake.

1. **मुझे विश्वास नहीं हो रहा है कि आपने ऐसा किया है।**

I can’t believe that you did it.

1. **आप ऐसा कैसे कर सकते हैं?**

How could you do such a thing?

1. **तुम्हारा दिमाग खराब है?**

Are you out of your mind?

1. **क्या में आपसे बात कर सकता हु?**

May I have a word?

1. **क्या आपको बुरा लगता है अगर मैं आपको टोकता हूं?**

Do you mind if I interrupt you?

1. **मुझे लगता है कि तुम ही दोसी हो**

I think you are the one to blame.

1. **मुझे लगता है कि तुम ही हो जो यह कर सकता था।**

I think you are the one who could have done it.

Advance Grammer

## Tenses

Tense is a grammatical method uses in languages which determines the continuation or completeness of any particular action or state.

* What is its use in our day to day life:-

Without tense, we can’t relate the verb with the time and we are not able to determine its completeness or continuity. It becomes a tough task for us to write statements without tense and express its proper meaning to other people.

* Types:-

Tenses are divided into 3 types

1. Present tense
2. Past tense
3. Future tense

Let’s discuss about all the sentences one by one:-

### Simple Present Tense.

Simple present tense represents an action that happening at present (now) and does not indicate when the action is presumed to be stopped.

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को हम इनके अंतिम हिस्सो को ( वाक्यों के आखरी हिस्से) देख कर पहचान सकते हैं| ऐसे वाक्यों के अंतिम छोर पर ‘ता है’,‘ता हूँ’,‘तो है’,‘ते है’ आदि शब्द लगे होते हैं|

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे वर्तमान काल मे होने वाले कार्य का विवरण मिलता है, जो की काम का होना या करने को दर्शाता है| इसके अतिरिक्त (वर्तमान काल मे होने वाले यह कार्य) कार्य की समाप्ती का सटीक समय इन वाक्यों मे देखने को नहीं मिलता|

* Structure of the sentences:-

It is structured like;

Subject + {(If needed Auxiliary Verb)} + Main Verb (1st form)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/You/We/They | Do, Have etc. |
| He / She or Any Name. | Does, Has etc. |

Example:-

I go. I play. I dance.You go.

मैं जाता हूँ| मैं खेलता हूँ| मैं नाचता हूँ| तुम जाते हो|

1. Affirmative sentences:-

Rule 1- (i) Subject (Single number/Third person) + 1st form of verb + s/es.

Example of Rule 1:-

* He goes to college.

वह कॉलेज जाता है|

* Mitaplaysthe piano.

मीता पीआनो बजाती है|

* Gitasings.

गीता गाती है

* Latawritespoem.

लता कविता लिखती है|

* Heplaysfootball.

वह फूटबाल खेलता है|

* Youswim.

वह तैरता है|

* ShecooksFood.

वह खाना बनाती है|

* Iswim.

मैं तैरता हूँ|

* Hareshridesbicycle.

हरेश साइकल चलाता है |

* Icelebrate.

मैं जश्न मनाता हूँ|

Rule 2 –Subject (pluralnumber) + 1stformofverb + object (ifany).

Rule 2 Example:-

* Theyplaycricket.

वे क्रिकेट खेलते हैं|

* Wedrinkjuice.

हम जूस पीते हैं|

* Theywatchmovie.

वे मुभी देखते हैं|

* Wego.

हम जाते हैं|

* Wecelebratetogether.

हम एक साथ जश्न मनाते हैं|

1. NegativeSentences:

Rule 1 –Subject (Singlenumber/Third-person) + doesnot + 1stformofverb.

Rule 1 Example–

* + - * Hedoesnotgotocollege.

वह स्कूल नहीं जाता है|

* + - * Gitadoesnotsing-song.

गीता गाना नहीं गाती है|

* + - * Hedoesn’tplayfootball.

वह फूटबल नहीं खेलते हैं|

* + - * Shedoesn’tcookfood.

वह खाना नहीं बनाती है|

* + - * Mitadoesn’tplaythe piano.

मीता पीआनो नहीं बजाती है|

* + - * Latadoesn’twritea poem.

लता कविता नहीं लिखती है|

Rule 2 –Subject (I,You,We,They) + donot + 1stformofverb.

Rule 2 Example –

* + Youdonotswim.

तुम नहीं तैरते हो|

* + Idonotswim.

मैं नहीं तैरता हूँ|

* + Idonotcelebrate.

में जश्न नहीं मनाता हूँ|

* + Theydonotplaycricket.

वे क्रिकेट नहीं खेलते हैं|

* + We do not drink juice.

हम जूस नहीं पीते हैं|

* + They do not watch movie.

वे मुभी नहीं देखते हैं|

* + We do not go.

हम नहीं जाते हैं|

* + We do not celebrate together.

हम एक साथ जश्न नहीं मनाते हैं|

* + You do not exercise.

तुम अभ्यास नहीं करते हो|

1. Interrogative Sentences:-

Rule 1 – Does + Subject ( Single number / Third person ) + 1st form of verb.

Rule 1 Example –

* + Does he go to college?

क्या वह कॉलेज जाता है?

* + Does Gita sing-song?

क्या गीता गाना गाती है?

* + Does he play football?

क्या वह फूटबल खेलता है?

* + Does she cook food?

क्या वह खाना बनाती है?

* + Does Mita play Piano?

क्या मिता पीआनो बजाती है?

* + Does Lata write poem?

क्या लता कविता लिखती है?

Rule 2 –Do + Subject (Pluralnumber,I,We,YouandThey) + Verb 1stform.

Rule 2 Example –

* + Do you swim?

क्या तुम तैरते हो?

* + Do I swim?

क्या मैं तैरता हूँ?

* + Do I celebrate?

क्या मैं जश्न मनाता हूँ?

* + Do they play cricket?

क्या वे लोग क्रिकेट खेलते है?

* + Do we drink juice?

क्या हम जूस पीते हैं?

* + Do they watch the movie?

क्या वे मुभी देखते हैं?

* + Do we go?

क्या हम जाते हैं?

* + Do we celebrate together?

क्या हम एक साथ जश्न मनाते है?

* + Do you exercise?

क्या तुम अभ्यास करते हो?

1. Interrogative and negative sentences:-

Rule 1 – (Does + not) doesn’t + subject (singular number / third person) + 1st form ofverb.

Rule 1 Example –

* + Doesn’t he go to college?

क्या वह कॉलेज नहीं जाते है?

* + Doesn’t Gita sing a song?

क्या गीता गाना नहीं गाती है?

* + Doesn’t he play football?

क्या वह फूटबल नहीं खेलता है?

* + Doesn’t she cook food?

क्या वह खाना नहीं बनाती है?

* + Doesn’t Mita play the piano?

क्या मिता पीआनो नहीं बजाती है?

* + Doesn’t Lata write a poem.

क्या लता कविता नहीं लिखती है?

Rule 2 – (Do + not) don’t + subject ( plural number, I, We, You, They ) + 1st form ofVerb.

Rule 2 Example-

* + Don’t you swim?

क्या तुम नहीं तैरते हो?

* + Don’t I swim?

क्या में नहीं तैरता हूँ?

* + Don’t I celebrate?

क्या मैं नहीं जश्न नहीं मनाता हूँ?

* + Don’t they play cricket?

क्या वे क्रिकेट नहीं खेलते हैं?

* + Don’t we drink juice?

क्या हम जूस नहीं पीते हैं?

* + Don’t they watch movie?

क्या वे मुभी नहीं देखते हैं?

* + Don’t we go?

क्या हम नहीं खाते हैं?

* + Don’t we celebrate together?

क्या हम एक साथ जश्न नहीं मनाते हैं?

* + Don’t you exercise?

क्या तुम अभ्यास नहीं करते हो?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * Does he write an email? * She goes to work by car. * The Sun rises at the east. * We cook every day. * They sleep in the afternoon. * The children at home. * The Earth goes around the Sun. * Does not she lives in Paris? * Don’t we like sweet? * It snows a lot in winter in Russia. * We live in Texas. * I don’t wash the dishes. * I don’t like tea. * My daughter does the laundry. * Do you like ice-cream? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * हम उन्हे हर एक हफ्ते देखते हैं| * वह हर सुबह तैरता है| * क्या वह न्यूयर्क मे रहता है? * में कार के माध्यम ( जारिए ) से जाता हूँ| * क्या वह स्कूल नहीं जाता है? * क्या हम एक दूसरे को जान ते हैं? * यहाँ प्रतिदिन बारिश होता है| * वह अमेरिका मे अँग्रेजी बोलता है| * में क्या खाता हूँ? * सुरेश पानी पिता है| * मोनु को घूमना पसंद है| * मुझे कॉफी पसंद नहीं हैं| * क्या वह सोता नहीं है? * वह रविवार को छुट्टी मनाती है| * हम घूमने जाते है| |

### Present Continuous Tense.

Present continuous tense represents an action that is happening now (in this present time) or a ongoing action.

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘रहाहै’,‘रहीहै’,’रहेहो’आदिशब्दलगेहोतेहैं|

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे वर्तमान काल मे कार्य की होने का विवरण मिलता है, जो की काम की जारी होने को दर्शाता है| इसके अतिरिक्त (वर्तमान काल मे होने वाले यह कार्य) कार्य की जारी रहने की सटीक समय को नहीं दिया जाता|

* Structure of the sentences:-

It is structured like;

Subject + Auxiliary Verb (if needed) + presentformof Verb +ing+ object.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Subject | Auxiliary Verb |
| I | Am |
| He/She/It/Anyname or singular number. | Is |
| We / You / Theyor plural number | Are |

Example:-

I am writing. I am eating. I am thinking. You are writing. I am smelling.

मैं खा लिख रहा हूँ|मैं खा रहा हूँ|मैं सोच रहा हूँ|तुम लिख रहे हो|मैं सूंघ रहा हूँ|

1. Affirmative Sentences:-

Rule 1:Subject (He/She or any name , I , IT) + Is/am + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)

Example of Rule 1:-

* + - * Mukesh is writing.

मुकेश लिख रहा है|

* + - * Rani is jumping.

रानी कूद रही है|

* + - * He is running in the ground.

वह मैदान मे दौड़ रहा है |

* + - * It is raining.

वारीश हो रही है|

* + - * I am singing.

मे गा रहा हूँ|

* + - * He is talking.

वह बात कर रहा है|

* + - * She is playing with her doll.

वह अपनी गुड़िया के साथ खेल रही है|

* + - * Rita is dreaming.

रीता सपना देख रही है|

* + - * Mina is drinking milk.

मीना दूध पी रही है|

* + - * Lipu is sweeping.

लीपु झाड़ू लगा रहा है|

Rule 2: Subject (We, You, They) + Are + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Rule 2 Example:-

* + - * They are going to market.

वे बाजार जा रहे हैं|

* + - * You are learning

तुम सीख रहे हो|

* + - * We are fighting.

हम लढ रहे हैं |

* + - * They are dancing.

वे नाच रहे है|

* + - * We are watching.

हम देख रहे हैं|

1. Negative Sentences:-

Rule 1 –Subject (He/She or any name,I,It) + Is/am+not + 1stformofverb + ing + object(ifany)

Rule 1 Example–

* + - * Mukesh is not writing.

मुकेश नहीं लिख रहा है|

* + - * He is not running in the ground.

वह मैदान मे नहीं दौड़ रहा है|

* + - * I am not singing a song.

मे गाना नहीं गा रहा हूँ|

* + - * She is not playing with her doll.

वह अपने गुड़िया से नहीं खेल रही है|

* + - * Mina is not drinking milk.

मीना दूध नहीं पी रही है|

* + - * Rani is not jumping.

रानी नहीं कूद रही है|

* + - * It is not raining.

वारिश नहीं हो रही है|

* + - * He is not talking.

वह बात नहीं कर रहा है|

* + - * Rita is not dreaming.

रीता सपना नहीं देख रही है|

* + - * Lipu is not sweeping.

लीपु झाड़ू नहीं लगा रहा है|

Rule 2 –Subject (You,We,They) + are + not + 1st form of verb + ing+object(ifany)

Rule 2 Example-

* + - * They are not going to market.

वे बाजार नहीं जा रहे हैं|

* + - * You are not learning.

तुम नहीं सीख रहे हो|

* + - * We are not fighting.

हम नहीं लढ रहे हैं|

* + - * They are not dancing.

वे नहीं नाच रहे हैं|

* + - * We are not watching.

हम नहीं देख रहे हैं|

1. Interrogative Sentences:-

Rule 1 – Is/am + Subject (He/She or any name, It, I ) + 1st form of verb + ing + object(if any)

Rule 1 Example –

* + - * Is Mukesh writing?

क्या मुकेश लिख रहा है?

* + - * Is he running in the ground?

क्या वह मैदान मे दौड़ रहा है?

* + - * Am I singing a song?

क्या मे गाना गा रहा हूँ?

* + - * Is she playing with her doll?

क्या वह अपने गुड़िया के साथ खेल रही है?

* + - * Is mina drinking milk?

क्या मीना दूध पी रही है?

* + - * Is rani jumping?

क्या रानी कूद रही है?

* + - * Is it raining?

क्या वरिश हो रही है?

* + - * Is he talking?

क्या वह बात कर रहा है?

* + - * Is Rita dreaming?

क्या रीता सपने देख रही है?

* + - * Is lipu sweeping?

क्यालीपु झाड़ू लगा रहा है?

Rule 2 –Are + Subject (We,You and They) + Verb 1st form of verb + ing + object(if any).

Rule 2 Example–

* + - * Are they going to market?

क्या वे बाजार जा रहे है?

* + - * Are you learning?

क्या तुम सीख रहे हो?

* + - * Are we fighting?

क्या हम लढ रहे हैं?

* + - * Are they dancing?

क्या वे नाच रहे हैं?

* + - * Are we watching?

क्या हम देख रहे हैं?

1. Interrogative & negative sentences:-

Rule 1 – Is/Am+ subject (He/She or any name,It,I) + not + 1st form of verb + ing + object (ifany).

Example –

* + Is Mukesh not writing a letter?

क्या वह मैदान मे नहीं दौड़ रहा है?

* + Is he not running in the ground?

क्या मुकेश नहीं लिख रहा है?

* + Am I not singing a song?

क्या मे नहीं गा रहा हूँ?

* + Is she not playing with her doll?

क्या वह उसकी गुड़िया के साथ नहीं खेल रही है?

* + Is mina not drinking milk?

क्या मीना दूध नहीं पी रही है?

* + Is rina not jumping?

क्या रीना नहीं कूद रही है?

* + Is it not raining?

क्या वरिश नहीं हो रही है?

* + Is he not talking?

क्या वह बात नहीं कर रहा है?

* + Is rita not dreaming?

की रीता सपना नहीं देख रही है?

* + Is lipu not sweeping?

क्या लीपु झाड़ू नहीं लगा रहा है?

Rule 2 – Are + subject ( We , You , They ) + not + 1st form of Verb + ing + object(if any).

Example-

* + - * Are they not going to market?

क्या वे बाजार नहीं जा रहे हैं?

* + - * Are you not learning?

क्या तुम नहीं सीख रहे हो?

* + - * Are we not fighting?

क्या हम नहीं लढ रहे हैं?

* + - * Are they not dancing?

क्या वे नहीं नाच रहे हैं?

* + - * Are we not watching?

क्या हम नहीं देख रहे हैं?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI.**   * They are gaming * Siku is playing with the dog. * Are they not thinking? * Am I lying? * We are roaming around the streets. * You are kidding. * Are you talking? * Poonam is dancing. * Birds are eating. * Teacher is teaching. * We are going to school. * Rakesh is cooking rice. * We are not playing squash. * Is she gossiping? * I am not doing anything | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * वे उनके किताब पढ़ रहे हैं| * वे टीभी नहीं देख रहे हैं| * क्या तुम नहीं सो रहे हो? * पीयूष हस रहा है| * क्या हम रो रहे हैं? * तुम क्यूँ अपना होम वर्क नहीं कर रहे हो? * मे यहाँ बैठा हूँ| * क्या मे पढ़ रहा हूँ? * तुम क्या कर रहे हो? * मिटू सबजी खरीद रहा है| * मे मोबाइल चला रहा हूँ| * तुम अभी तैर रहे हो| * हम क्रिकेट देख रहे हैं| * मे एक नौकरी के लिए पढ़ रहा हूँ| * नीरू ड्रम बजा रही है| |

### Present Perfect Tense.

Present perfect tense represents an action that happened at an unidentified time before the present time (now).

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘चुकाहै’,‘चुकीहै’,‘याहै’,‘आहै’,‘येहै’आदिशब्दलगेहोतेहैं|

Important: - इनवाक्योंमेकार्यकाबर्तमानकालमेसंपनहोनापायाजाताहै|

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + Auxiliary Verb + Past participle form of Main Verb +Object (if any)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/You/We/They(any plural number) | Have |
| He / She or Any Name. | Has |

**Example:-**

**I have shown. I have taught. I have sat. You have kept. I have met.**

मैं दिखा चुका हूँ|मैं सीखा चुका हूँ|मैं बैठ चुका हूँ|तुम रख चुके हो|मैं मिल चुका हूँ|

1. Affirmative Sentences:-

Rule 1: Subject (I, You, We, They) + have + Past participle form of verb + object (if any)

Example of Rule 1:-

* + - * I have laughed.

मैंहसचुकाहूँ|

* + - * We have bought a pen.

हमनेएककलमखरीदलियाहै|

* + - * You have run in the park.

तुमपार्कमेदौड़चुकेहो|

* + - * They have chosen music.

उन्होनेसंगीतचुनलियाहैं|

* + - * You have gave a.

तुमबहतसारेपैसेदेदियेहो|

Rule 2-Subject (He,She or any name) + has + Past participle form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* + - * Amit has eaten rice.

अमित चावल खा चुका है|

* + - * Rahul has sold his bicycle.

राहुल ने खुदका साइकल बेच दिया है|

* + - * She has slept the whole day.

उसने दिनभर सो लिया है|

* + - * He has dug a hole.

उसने एक ग्ड्ढा खोद लिया है|

* + - * Lopa has thrown a ball.

लोपा ने गेंद फेका है|

* + - * Minu has sent a letter.

मीनू ने एक पत्र भेजा है|

* + - * Roopa has gone to the theatre.

रूपा थिएटर जा चुकी है|

* + - * He has rented a car.

उसने एक गाड़ी किराए पर ले लिया है|

* + - * She has caught a thief.

उसने एक चोर पकड़ लिया है|

* + - * Neema has done this work.

यह कार्य नीमा ने किया है|

1. Negative Sentences:-

Rule 1 –Subject (I, You, We, They) + have not + Pastparticiple form of verb + object.

Rule 1 Example–

* + - * I have not laughed.

हमने कलम नहीं खरीदा है|

* + - * We have not bought a pen.

मैंने नहीं हसा है|

* + - * You have not run in the park.

उन्होने संगीत नहीं चुना है|

* + - * They have not chosen music.

तुमने पार्क मे नहीं दौड़ा है|

* + - * You have gave a lot of money.

तुमने बहत सारे पैसे नहीं दिया है|

Rule 2 –Subject (He, She or any name ) + has not + Past participle form of verb + object.

Rule 2 Example–

* + - * Amit has not eaten rice.

राहुल ने खुदका साइकल नहीं बेचा है|

* + - * Rahul has not sold his bicycle.

अमित ने चावला नहीं खाया है|

* + - * She has not slept whole day.

उसने दिन भर नहीं सोया है|

* + - * He has not dug a hole.

उसने ग्ड्ढा नहीं खोदा है|

* + - * Lopa has not thrown a ball.

लोपा ने बल नहीं फेका है|

* + - * Minu has not sent a letter.

मीनू ने एक पत्र नहीं भेजा है|

* + - * Roopa has not gone to the theatre.

उसने एक गाड़ी किराए पर नहीं लिया है|

* + - * He has not rented a car today.

रूपा थिएटर नहीं गयी है|

* + - * She has not caught a thief.

उसने एक भी चोर नहीं पकड़ा है|

* + - * Neema has not done this work.

यह कार्य नीमा ने नहीं किया है|

1. Interrogative Sentences:-

Rule 1 – Have + Subject (I, you, we, they ) + Past participle form of verb + object(if any).

Rule 1 Example –

* + - * Have I laughed?

क्या में हसा हूँ?

* + - * Have we bought a pen?

क्या हम ने एक कलम खरीद लिया है?

* + - * Have you run in the park?

क्या तुम पार्क मे दौड़ चुके हो?

* + - * Have they chosen music?

क्या उन्होने संगीत चुन लिया है?

* + - * Have you gave a lot of money?

क्या तुम ने बहत सारे पैसे दिया है?

Rule 2 –Has + Subject(He, She or any name) + Past participle form of Verb+ object(if any).

Rule 2 Example-

* + - * Has Amit eaten rice?

क्या राहुल ने खुदका साइकल बेच दिया है?

* + - * Has Rahul sold his bicycle?

क्या अमित चावल खा चुका है?

* + - * Has she slept whole day?

क्या उसने दिन भर सो चुकी/लिया है?

* + - * Has he dug a hole?

क्या उसने ग्ड्ढा खोद लिया है?

* + - * Has Lopa thrown a ball?

क्या लोपा ने बल फेंका है?

* + - * Has Minu sent a letter?

क्या मीनू ने पत्र भेजा है?

* + - * Has Roopa gone to the theatre?

क्या रूपा थिएटर जा चुकी है?

* + - * Has he rented a car today?

क्या उसने एक गाड़ी किराए पर ले लिया है?

* + - * Has she caught a thief?

क्या नीमा ने यह कार्य किया है?

* + - * Has Neema done this work?

क्या उसने एक चोर पकड़ चुकी/लिया है?

1. Interrogative & negative sentences:-

Rule 1 – Have + not + subject (I , You , We , They) + past participle form of verb + object(if any).

Example –

* + - * Have not I laughed?

क्या मैंने नहीं हसा है?

* + - * Have not we bought a pen?

क्या हमने कलम नहीं खरीदा है?

* + - * Have not you run in the park?

क्या तुम ने पार्क मे नहीं दौड़ा है?

* + - * Have not they chosen music?

क्या उन्होने संगीत नहीं चुना है?

* + - * Have not you gave a lot of money?

क्या तुम ने बहत सारे पैसे नहीं दिया है?

Rule 2 – Has + not + subject (He , She or any name) + Past participle form of Verb + object(if any).

Example-

* + - * Has not Amit eaten rice?

क्या अमित ने चावल नहीं खाया है?

* + - * Has not Rahul sold his bicycle?

क्या राहुल ने खुदका साइकल नहीं बेचा है?

* + - * Has not she slept the whole day?

क्या उसने दिनभर नहीं सोया है?

* + - * Has not he dug a hole?

क्या उसने ग्ड्ढा नहीं खोदा है?

* + - * Has not Lopa thrown a ball?

क्या लोपा ने बल नहीं फेका है?

* + - * Has not Minu sent a letter?

क्या मीनू ने पत्र नहीं भेजा है?

* + - * Has not Roopa gone to theatre?

क्या रूपा थिएटर नहीं गयी है?

* + - * Has not he related a car today?

क्या उसने गाड़ी किराए पर नहीं लिया है?

* + - * Has not she caught a thief?

क्या उसने चोर पकड़ नहीं लिया है?

* + - * Has not Neema done this work?

क्या नीमा ने यह कार्य नहीं किया है?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * You have known each other since last year. * I have not forgotten my homework at class. * I have seen Pandey several times before. * We have won five silver medals so far. * Have not I bought a car? * He has not taught us. * Has not he gone to work? * He has seen lokesh. * She has tried very hard. * I have not play table tennis before. * I cooked a cup of rice. * Milu worked very hard. * The police have not caught the thief yet. * I have explained it may time. * Has not she done his work? * She has sung the song. * I have not seen DDLG. * She has bought a new car. * My Manage has left for the day. * It has rained. * I have told truth. * They have finished their food. * I have finished my bath. * He has visited Delhi. * My bother has lived in Ghaziabad. * She has just left. * They have gone to Chandigarh. * She has sung this song many time. * He has fallen ill. * I have not seen you for a long time. * I have conveyed my message to her. * I have never seen such a beautiful bird. * I have never seen such a beautiful place. * Someone has picked my pocket. * I have been to Shimla twice. * Have you been to Chandigarh? * Have they ever played snooker? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * उसने यहाँ सारी ज़िंदगी रह लिया| * मैंने यहाँ १० साल काम कर चुका है| * क्या उसने सिनेमा देख लिया है? * हमने पढाइ कर लिया है| * क्या तुमने स्पीकर ऑन कर लिया है? * क्या उन्होने पानी पी लिया है? * सुमन ने परीक्षा पास कर लिया है| * हम मदुराई जा चुके है| * क्या तुमने नल बंद कर लिया है? * उसने अपना काम कर लिया है| * तुम इस देश मे कितने साल से रह रहे हो? * तुम कितने समय से मुझी जान ते हो? * क्या उन्होने कपड़े की सफाई नहीं किया है? * उसने लड़ाई लढ लिया है| * तुम ने कितने समय पहले यह शो देख लिया? |

### Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

Present perfect tense represents an action that happened at past and has continued up until now .

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर ‘रहाहै’ , ‘रहीहै’ , ‘रहेहो’ आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इनवाक्योंमेकार्यकाभूतकालमेंशुरुआतहोनेकोदर्शाताहैओरकार्यबर्तमानकालमेंचालूरहताहै।(कार्यकाप्रारंभहोनेकासमयनिर्धारितरहताहै|)

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb + Present form of verb + ing +Object (if any)+ Time period**

.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Subject | Auxiliary Verb |
| I/You/We/They(any plural number) | Have been |
| He / She or Any Name. | Has been |

**Example:-**

I have been eating.

में खा रहा हूं ।

I have been swimming for 15 min.

में १५ मीनट से तैर रहा हूँ।

I have been playing football since 2007.

में २००७ से फूटबाल खेल रहा हूँ।

You have been reading from morning.

तुमसुबह से पढ़ रहे हो ।

I have been going to morning walk since Monday.

मेंसोमबार से मॉर्निंग वॉक पे जा रहा हूं ।

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

Rule 1:- Subject (I, You, We, They) + have been + present form of verb +ing + object (if any)

Example of Rule 1:-

* + - * I have been singing a song since morning.

में सूबह से गाना गा रहा हूँ ।

* + - * We have been watching the film since 1 hour.

हम १ घंटे से सिनेमा देख रहे हैं ।

* + - * You have been running since 15 minutes.

तुम १५ मीनट से दौड़ रहे हो ।

* + - * They have been playing chess since evening.

वे शाम से चेस खेल रहे हैं ।

* + - * You have been farming since 1997.

तुम सन १९९७ से खेती कर रहे हो।

Rule 2-Subject (He,She or any name) + has been + present form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Rule 2 Example:-

* + - * Sweta has been throwing a stone.

स्वेता पत्थर फेंक रही है ।

* + - * He has been buying a house.

वह घर खरीद रहा है ।

* + - * Raghu has been selling his motorcycle.

रघु गाड़ी बेच रहा है ।

* + - * She has been catching a fish.

वह मछ्ली पकड़ रही है ।

* + - * She has been talking whole day.

वह दिन भर बात कर रही है ।

* + - * He has been drawing since 2 hours.

वह २ घंटे से चित्र बना रहा है ।

* + - * Soham has been eating roti.

सोहम रोटी खा रहा है ।

* + - * Mita has been doing this work.

मिता कार्य कर रही है ।

* + - * Raju has been sending a telegram.

राजू टेलेग्राम भेज रहा है ।

* + - * Litu has been going to park.

लिटू पार्क जा रहा है।

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

Rule 1 –Subject (I, You, We, They) + have not +been + present participle form of verb + ing + object.

Rule 1 Example–

* + - * I have not been singing a song since morning.

में सूबह से गाना नहीं गा रहा हूँ ।

* + - * We have not been watching film since 1 hour.

हम१घ्नटेसेफिल्मनहींदेखरहेहैं।

* + - * You have not been running since 15 minutes.

तुम १५ मीनट से नहीं दौड़ रहे हो ।

* + - * They have not been playing chess since evening.

वे शाम से चेस नहीं खेल रहे हैं ।

* + - * You have not been farming since 1997.

तुम सन १९९७ से खेती नहीं कर रहे हो ।

Rule 2 –Subject (He , She or any name ) + has not+ been +Present participle form of verb + +ing+ object.

Rule 2 Example–

* + - * Sweta has not been throwing a stone.

स्वेता पत्थर नहीं फेक रही है ।

* + - * He has not been buying a house.

वह घर नहीं खरीद रहा है ।

* + - * Raghu has not been selling his motorcycle.

रघु गाड़ी नहीं बेंच रहा है ।

* + - * She has not been catching a fish.

वह मछ्ली नहीं पकड रही है ।

* + - * She has not been talking whole day.

वह दिन भर बात नहीं करे रही है ।

* + - * He has not been drawing since 2 hours.

वह २ घंटे से चित्र नहीं कर रही है ।

* + - * Soham has not been eating roti.

सोहम रोटी नहीं क्ल्हा रहा है ।

* + - * Mita has not been doing this work.

मीता कोई काम नहीं कर रही है।

* + - * Raju has not been sending a telegram.

राजू टेलेग्राम नहीं भेज रहा है ।

* + - * Litu has not been going to park.

लिटू पार्क नही जा रहा है।

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

Rule 1 – Have + Subject(I ,You , We , They)+ been+ 1st form of verb + ing +object

Rule 1 Example –

* + - * Have I been singing a song since morning?

क्या में सुबह से गाना गा रहा हूँ ?

* + - * Have we been watching film since 1 hour?

क्या हम 1 घंटे से फिल्म देख रहे है?

* + - * Have you been running since 15 minutes?

क्या तूम १५ मिनट से दोड रहे हो ?

* + - * Have They been playing chess since evening?

क्या वे शाम से सतरंज खेल रहे है?

* + - * Have you been farming since 1997?

क्या आप सन १९९७ से खेती कर रहे है?

Rule 2 –Has + Subject(He,She or any name) + been + Verb 1stform + ing + Object

Rule 2 Example–

* + - * Has Sweta been throwing a stone?

क्या स्वेता पत्थर फेंक रही है ?

* + - * Has he been buying a house?

क्या वह घर खरीद रहा है ?

* + - * Has Raghu been solding his motor cycle ?

क्या रघु अपनि गाड़ी को बेच रहा है ?

* + - * Has she been catching a fish?

क्या वह मचली पकड़ रही है ?

* + - * Has she been talking whole day?

क्या वह पूरी दिन बात कर रही है ?

* + - * Has he been drawing since 2 hours?

क्या वह २ घंटे से ड्राविंग कर रही है ?

* + - * Has Soham been eating roti ?

क्या सोहम रोटी खा रहा है?

* + - * Has Mita been doing this work?

क्या मिता यह कम कर रही है ?

* + - * Has Raju been sending a telegram ?

क्या राजू टेलेग्राम भेज रही है ?

* + - * Has Litu been going to park?

क्या लितु पार्क जा रहा है ?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

Rule 1 – Have +Subject(I ,You , We , They) +not + been+ 1st form of verb + ing +object

Example –

* + - * Have I not been singing a song since morning?

क्या में सूबह से गाना नहीं गा रहा हूँ ?

* + - * Have we not been watching film since 1 hour?

क्या आप १ घंटे से फिल्म नहीं देख रहे है ?

* + - * Have you not been running since 15 minutes?

क्या आप १५ मिनट से नहीं दोड़ रहे है?

* + - * Have they not been playing chess since evening?

क्या आप शाम से सतरंज नहीं खेल रहे रहे है?

* + - * Have you not been farming since 1997?

क्या आप १९९७ से खेती नहीं कर रहे हैं ?

Rule 2 – Has +Subject(He,She or any name) +not + been+ 1st form of verb + ing +object

Example-

* + - * Has sweta not been throwing a stone?

क्या स्वेता पत्थर नहीं फेंक रही है ?

* + - * Has He not been buying a house?

क्या वह घर नहीं खरीद रहा है ?

* + - * Has Raghu not been selling his motorcycle?

क्या रघु अपनि गाड़ी को बेच नहीं रहा है ?

* + - * Has She not been catching a fish?

क्या वह मछ्ली नहीं पकड़ रही है ?

* + - * Has She not been talking whole day?

क्या वह दिन भर बात नहीं कर रही है ?

* + - * Has He not been drawing since 2 hours?

क्या वह २ घंटे से ड्राविंग नहीं कर रही है ?

* + - * HasSoham not been eating roti?

क्या सोहम रोटी नहीं खा रहा हैं ?

* + - * Has Mita not been doing this work?

क्या मीता यह काम नहीं कर रही है ?

* + - * Has Raju not been sending a telegram ?

क्या राजू टेलेग्राम नहीं भेज रहा है ?

* + - * Has Litu not been going to park?

क्या लिटू पार्क नहीं जा रहा है ?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * You have been waiting here for one hour. * We have not been waiting for two hours. * 3)They have been talking for the last hour. * She has been working at that company for three years? * What have you been doing for the last 30 minutes? * James has been teaching at the university sinceJune? * Why has Nancy not been taking her medicine for the last three days? * Has he been watering the plants for two hours? * I have been living in America since 2000. * She has been writing for two hours. * Mother has been cooking rice for ten minutes. * We have not been playing volleyball since 1998. * Have I not been going to office since Saturday? * she has been eating mango for ten minutes. * The child has been sleeping since morning. | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * श्याम इस किताब को एक घंटे से पढ़ रहा है । * वह एस बंगले में चार साल से रह रहा है । * वह पाँच दिन से नहीं खा रही है । * ममें सूबहा ४ बजे से पढ़ रहा हूँ । * क्या रोहित ४ घंटे से क्रिकेट खेल रहा है ? * मुझे सोमबार से अच्छा नहीं लग रहा है । * क्या हार्दिक सूबहा से गाना नहीं गा रहा है ? * वे जुलाई से अपना समय क्यूँ बर्बाद कर रहे हैं ? * क्या विराट मेरा सहायता कई सालों से कर हाए हैं ? * कपिल यहाँ ३ साल से पढ़ रहा है । * कया वो भुवनेश्वर से दो पहर में आ रही है ? * क्या डॉक्टर ५ बजे से ऑपरेशन कर रहे हैं ? * तुम सोमबार से यह पुस्तक ढूंढ रहे हो । * क्या राजीव ५ साल से नौकरी कर रहा है ? * सिखर चार साल से इंग्लिश सीख रहे है । |

### Simple Past Tense.

Simple past tense represents an action that happened at past and does not extend into present (already occurred at past time).

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनके अंतिम हिस्सो को (वाक्यों केआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘आ’,‘या’,‘ई’,‘ये’,‘यो’,‘ताथा’,‘तेथे’,‘तीथी’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भूत काल में शुरुआत होने को दर्शाता है ।(कार्य का प्रारंभ होने का समय निर्धारित रहता है| )

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + Auxiliary Verb (if needed) + 2nd form of Main Verb +Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/You/We/They (Plural) | Did |
| He / She /It or Any Name.(Singular) | Did |

* Subject+verb 2nd form+ object

She came here

* Subject+did + not +verb 1st form+ object

She did not come here

* Did + Subject + verb 1st form+ object

Did she come here

* Did + Subject +not + verb 1st form+ object

Did she not come here?

Example:-

I went to the cinema hall last night.

में कल रात सिनेमा हाल गया था ।

I skipped.

मैंने छोड़दिया ।

Rohit lived in Mumbai.

रोहित मुंबई में रहता था ।

1. Affirmative Sentences:-

* Rule 1: Subject (He, She or any name) + 2nd form of verb+ object (if any)

Example of Rule 1-

* He met me yesterday.

वह कल मुझसे मिला था ।

* She finished the homework.

उसने घर का काम खत्म कर दिया ।

* Rajesh lived in Australia.

राजेश ऑस्ट्रेलिया में रहता था ।

* Police caught a thief.

पुलिस ने एक चोर को गिरफ्तार किया ।

* Radha played the Casio.

राधा ने कैस्यो बजाया ।

* Rule 2-Subject (I, You, We, They,) + 2nd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* They played baseball.

उन्होने बेस बॉल खेली ।

* We saw a comedy movie last night.

हमने कल रात एक कॉमेडी फिल्म देखी ।

* They met a tiger in Jungle.

वे जंगल में एक बाघ से मिलें ।

* I played ludo .

मेंने लूडो खेला ।

* I studied at Utkal university.

मेंउत्कल विश्वविद्यालय में अध्ययन किया ।

1. Negative Sentences:-

* Rule 1 –Subject (He, She or any number) + did not + 2nd form of verb + object ( if any)

Rule 1 Example–

* He did not meet me yesterday.

वह कल मुझसे नहीं मिला ।

* She did not finish the homework.

उसने काम पूरा नहीं किया ।

* Rajesh did not live in Australia.

राजेश ऑस्ट्रेलिया में नहीं रहता था ।

* Police did not catch a thief.

पुलिस ने चोर को नहीं पकड़ा ।

* Radha did not play the Casio.

राधा कैसियो नहीं बजती थी ।

* Rule 2 –Subject (I,You,We,They) + did not + 2ndform of verb + object (if any).

Rule 2 Example–

* They did notplay bassball.

उन्होने बेस बोल नहीं खेली ।

* We did not see a comedy movie last night.

हमने कल रात एक कॉमेडी फिल्म नहीं देखी ।

* They did not meet a tiger in the Jungle .

वे जंगल में एक बाघ से नहीं मिले ।

* I did notplay ludo .

मेंने लूडो नहीं खेला ।

* I did notstudy at Utkal university .

मेंने उत्कल विश्वविद्यालय में पढ़ाई नहीं की ।

1. Interrogative Sentences:-

* Rule 1 – Did + Subject (He , She or any name ) + 2nd form of verb. +Object(if any)

Rule 1 Example –

* Did He meet me yesterday?

क्या वह कल मुझसे मिला था ?

* Did She finish the homework?

क्या वह घर काम समाप्त किया था ?

* Did Rajesh live in Australia?

क्या राजेश ऑस्ट्रेलिया में रहता था ?

* Did Police catch a thief?

क्या पुलिस चोर को पकड़ा ?

* Did Radha play the casio ?

क्या राधा ने कैसियो बजाया था ?

* Rule 2 –Did + Subject (I, We, You and They) + 2nd form of the verb +Object(if any)

Rule 2 Example–

* Did they play base ball?

क्या उन्होने बेस बोल खेली ?

* Did we see a comedy movie last night?

क्या हमने कल रात एक कॉमेडी फिल्म देखी ?

* Did they meet a tiger in Jungle?

क्या उन्होने जुंगलेब में एक बाघ को मिलें ?

* Did I play ludo ?

क्या मैंने लोडू खेला ?

* Did I study at Utkal University?

क्या मैनी उत्कल विश्वविद्यालय में अध्ययन किया ?

1. Interrogative & negative sentences:-

* Rule 1 – Did + subject (He , She or any name) + not + 2nd form of verb + Object(if any)

Example –

* Did He not meet me yesterday?

क्या वह कल मुझसे नहीं मिला ?

* Did She not finish the homework?

क्या वह घर काम पूरा नहीं किया ?

* Did Rajesh not live in Australia?

क्या राजेश ऑस्ट्रेलिया में नहीं रहता था ?

* Did Police not catch a thief?

क्या पुलिस ने चोर को नहीं पकड़ा ?

* Did Radha not play the casio ?

क्या राधा केसियो नहीं बजती थी ?

* Rule 2 – Did + subject ( I , We , You , They ) + not + 2nd form of Verb + Object(if any)

Example-

* Did they not play base ball?

क्या उन्होने बेस बोल नहीं खेला ?

* Did we not see a comedy movie last night?

क्या हमने कॉमेडी फिल्म नहीं देखी ?

* Did they not meet a tiger in Jungle?

क्या वे जंगल में एक बाघ से नहीं मिले थे ?

* Did I not play ludo?

क्या मैं लूडो नहीं खेलता था ?

* Did I not study at Utkal University?

क्या मैंने उत्कल विश्वविद्यालय में अध्ययन नहीं किया ?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI.**   1. I finished work. 2. He arrived airport at 10:00 pm. 3. Kamal lived in Chennai. 4. I studied Hindi when I was a child. 5. Did you play guitar when you were a kid? 6. She worked at the restaurant after college. 7. They went to school. 8. The reality show attracted a large audience. 9. I left early because I was cold. 10. My parents arrived at home at half past six . 11. What did you do last week end ? 12. The police stopped me on my way home last night. 13. My uncle taught grammar. 14. We told our parents everything. 15. What time did your lessons start? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   1. उसने मुझसे एक कलाम दिया । 2. मैं इस घर में रहता था । 3. उसने अपने पिता को एक पत्र लिखा । 4. रोहित कल अपने पिता को देखने हयदरबाद गया । 5. वह कल क्रिकेट नहीं खेला । 6. राजू स्कूल नहीं गाया । 7. क्या उसने खाना खाया ? 8. क्या वह यहाँ नहीं अति थी ? 9. मैं कभी देर से नहीं आया । 10. क्या मैंने सच बोला ? 11. हमने पाठ नहीं पढ़ा । 12. उसने मछ्ली पकड़ी । 13. मैंने बचपन में भागा करता था । 14. तुम्हारे मामा कल कहाँ गए ? 15. उस बच्ये ने कितना पानी पिया ? |

### Past Continuous Tense.

Past continuous tense represents an action that was happening or going on at past time (action that occurring in the past).

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपररहेथे’,‘रहाथे’,‘रहीथी’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इनवाक्योंमेकार्यकाभूतकालमेजारीरहनेकोदर्शाताहै।

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + first form of Main Verb + ing +Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/He / She /It or Any Name (Singular) | Was |
| You/We/They (Plural) | Were |

Example:-

I was eating potato.

मैं आलू खा रहा था|

He was standing in the door.

वह दरवाजे पर खड़ा था।

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Subject (I , he , she or any name) + was + first form of verb + ing + object(if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* + - * I was talking to my sister.

मे अपने बहन से बात कर रहा था|

* + - * She was playing a flute.

वह एक बांसुरी बजा रही थी|

* + - * Sinchan was drinking a glass of glucose.

सिंचन एक ग्लास ग्लूकोस पी रहा था|

* + - * He was buying a pencil box.

वह एक पेंसिल बॉक्स खरीद रहा था|

* + - * Rahul was wearing his new pant.

राहुल अपनी नयी पैंट पहना था|

* + - * She was singing well.

वह अच्छी गा रही थी|

* + - * Rakesh was listening to the radio.

राकेश रेडियो सुन रहा था|

* + - * I was preparing for my match.

मे अपने मैच के लिए तैयारी कर रहा था|

* Doremon was making a flower pot.

डोरेमोन एक फूलों का गमला बना रहा था|

* She was running fast.

वह तेजी से दौड़ रही थी|

Rule 2:-Subject (You , We , They or plural number) + were +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* + - * They were decorating our house.

वे हमारे घर को सजा रहे थे|

* + - * We were going in wrong direction.

हम गलत दिशा मे जा रहे थे|

* + - * You were writing a story.

तुम एक कहानी लिख रहे थे|

* + - * We were sleeping.

हम सो रहे थे|

* + - * They were planting tree.

वे पौधे लगा रहे थे|

1. Negative Sentences:-

Rule 1:-Subject (I, he, she or any name) +wasnot + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* + - * I was not talking to my sister.

मे अपने बहन से नहीं बात कर रहा था|

* + - * She was not playing a flute.

वह एक बांसुरी नहीं बजा रही थी|

* + - * Sinchan was not drinking a glass of glucose.

सिंचन एक ग्लास ग्लूकोस नहीं पी रहा था|

* + - * He was not buying a pencil box.

वह एक पेंसिल बॉक्स नहीं खरीद रहा था|

* + - * Rahul was not wearing his new pant.

राहुल अपनी नयी पैंट नहीं पहना था|

* + - * She was not singing well.

वह अच्छी नहीं गा रही थी|

* + - * Rakesh was not listening to the radio.

राकेश रेडियो नहीं सुन रहा था|

* + - * I was not preparing for my match.

मे अपने मैच के लिए तैयारी नहीं कर रहा था|

* + - * Doremon was not making a flower pot.

डोरेमोन एक फूलों का गमला नहीं बना रहा था|

* + - * She was not running fast.

वह तेजी से नहीं दौड़ रही थी|

Rule 2:-Subject (You , We , They or plural number) +werenot +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* + - * They were not decorating our house.

वे हमारे घर को नहीं सजा रहे थे|

* + - * We were not going in wrong direction.

हम गलत दिशा मे नहीं जा रहे थे|

* + - * You were not writing a story.

तुम एक कहानी नहीं लिख रहे थे|

* + - * We were not sleeping.

हम नहीं सो रहे थे|

* + - * They were not planting tree.

वे पौधे नहीं लगा रहे थे|

1. Interrogative Sentences:-

Rule 1:- Was + Subject (I, he, she or any name) + first form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* + - * Was I talking to my sister?

क्या मे अपने बहन से बात कर रहा था?

* + - * Was she playing a flute?

क्या वह एक बांसुरी बजा रही थी?

* + - * Was Sinchan drinking a glass of glucose?

क्या सिंचन एक ग्लास ग्लूकोस पी रहा था?

* + - * Was He buying a pencil box?

क्या वह एक पेंसिल बॉक्स खरीद रहा था?

* + - * Was Rahul wearing his new pant?

क्या राहुल अपनी नयी पैंट पहना था?

* + - * Was she singing well?

क्या वह अच्छी गा रही थी?

* + - * Was Rakesh listening to the radio?

क्या राकेश रेडियो सुन रहा था?

* + - * Was I preparing for my match?

क्या मे अपने मैच के लिए तैयारी कर रहा था?

* + - * Was Doremon making a flower pot?

क्या डोरेमोन एक फूलों का गमला बना रहा था?

* + - * Was she running fast?

क्या वह तेजी से दौड़ रही थी?

Rule 2:- Were + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example–

* + - * Were they decorating our house?

क्या वे हमारे घर को सजा रहे थे?

* + - * Were we going in wrong direction?

क्या हम गलत दिशा मे जा रहे थे?

* + - * Were you writing a story?

क्या तुम एक कहानी लिख रहे थे?

* + - * Were we sleeping?

क्या हम सो रहे थे?

* + - * Were they planting tree?

क्या वे पौधे लगा रहे थे?

1. Interrogative & negative sentences:-

Rule 1:-Was + Subject (I, he, she or any name) +not + first form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* + - * Was I not talking to my sister?

क्या मे अपने बहन से नहीं बात कर रहा था?

* + - * Was she not playing a flute?

क्या वह एक बांसुरी नहीं बजा रही थी?

* + - * Was Sinchan not drinking a glass of glucose?

क्या सिंचन एक ग्लास ग्लूकोस नहीं पी रहा था?

* + - * Was He not buying a pencil box?

क्या वह एक पेंसिल बॉक्स नहीं खरीद रहा था?

* + - * Was Rahul not wearing his new pant?

क्या राहुल अपनी नयी पैंट नहीं पहना था?

* + - * Was she not singing well?

क्या वह अच्छी नहीं गा रही थी?

* + - * Was Rakesh not listening to the radio?

क्या राकेश रेडियो नहीं सुन रहा था?

* + - * Was I not preparing for my match?

क्या मे अपने मैच के लिए तैयारी नहीं कर रहा था?

* + - * Was Doremon not making a flower pot?

क्या डोरेमोन एक फूलों का गमला नहीं बना रहा था?

* + - * Was she not running fast?

क्या वह तेजी से नहीं दौड़ रही थी?

Rule 2:-Were + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +not + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Example-

* + - * Were they not decorating our house?

क्या वे हमारे घर को नहीं सजा रहे थे?

* + - * Were we not going in wrong direction?

क्या हम गलत दिशा मे नहीं जा रहे थे?

* + - * Were you not writing a story?

क्या तुम एक कहानी नहीं लिख रहे थे?

* + - * Were we not sleeping?

क्या हम नहीं सो रहे थे?

* + - * Were they not planting tree?

क्या वे पौधे नहीं लगा रहे थे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * I was not playing in the sand. * He was getting ready for the drama * Stacy was watering the plants. * She was dancing in the club. * Was I doing a work? * You were trying hard. * They were living in this city. * Were you going to pub? * I was not listening. * Was he cleaning the bike? * Were you not eating ice cream? * He was learning drawing. * You were not listing the items. * Were they not putting out the water? * We were preparing for our presentation. * You were crying * She was laughing * I was waiting you. * It was raining yesterday. * Harender was running after me. * He was watching TV * Everyone were sleeping at 10pm. * Boys was playing a cricket match. * I was feeling hungry * You were felling thirsty * She was singing a song. * I was going to GIP mall. * It was raining * He was reading the book * I was listing the news * What was Sunil doing in the room? * My brother was reading Amar Ujala * Where were you going ? * What was she planning in the evening? * Whom were you waiting? * I was waiting for my sister. * I was feeling good now? * Modi ji was giving speech. * They all were going to drink tea. | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * मैं अपने दादा के साथ घूम रहा था| * हम सिनेमा देखने नहीं गए थे| * वे सड़क पर नाच रहे थे| * अध्यापक व्हाइट बोर्ड पर लिख रहे थे| * सुभम वहाँ नहीं खड़ा था| * क्या वह सफाई कर रहा था ? * क्या हम कूद रहे थे ? * न्यायाधीश मुक़द्दमा को देख रहे थे| * क्या वह तरकारी बना रही थी? * क्या मे नियमित रूप से औषधि खा रहा था? * वे बहत गुस्सा कर रहे थे| * तुम कागज लपेट रहे थे| * क्या वह पतंग पकड़ रहा था ? * मे शॉपिंग नहीं कर रहा था| * विमान उड़ान भर रहा था| |

### Past Perfect Tense.

Past perfect tense represents an action that was already finished in the past time (it occurred before an action happen).

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘चुकाथा,‘चुकेथे’,’याथा’,‘येथे’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भूत काल मे एक निर्धारित अवधि मे समाप्ती होने का बोध मिलता है|

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + third form of Main Verb+Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/He / She /It or Any Name.(Singular) | Had |
| You/We/They (Plural) | Had |

Example:-

I had reached the home.

मे घर पहुँच चुका था|

We had reached the railway station.

हम रेल्वे स्टेशन पहुँच चुके थे|

They had become ready before he arrived.

वे उसके आने से पहले ही तैयार हो चुके थे|

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Subject (I , he , she or any name) + had + 3rd form of verb + object(if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* + She had solved such sums before.

वह गणित समाधान कर चुकी थी|

* + He had made plans.

वह योजना बना चुका था|

* + She had taken meals.

वह भोजन ग्रहण कर चुकी थी|

* + I had finished my work.

मे अपना कार्य कर चुका था|

* + She had gone to Mumbai.

वह मुंबई गयी थी|

* + Sukant had behaved like this.

सुकान्त ऐसा बर्ताब कर चुका था|

* + Mithilesh had broken all relations.

मिथिलेश सारे रिश्ते तोड़ चुका था|

* + I had conducted an experiment.

मे एक प्रयोग कर चुका था|

* + Simran had answered the question.

सिमरन जवाब दे चुकी थी|

* + I had declared the result.

मे फल घोषित कर चुका था|

**Rule 2:-** Subject (You , We , They or plural number) + had + 3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* They had won the competition.

वे प्रतियोगिता जीत चुके थे|

* We had got the chance.

हमे मौका मिल चुका था|

* You had heard the radio.

तुम रेडियो सुन चुके थे|

* They had asked about me.

वे मेरे वारे मे पुछ चुके थे|

* We had caught the culprit.

हम दोषी को पकड़ चुके थे|

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (I, he, she or any name) +had + not + 3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* She had not solved such sums before.

वह गणित समाधान नहीं कर चुकी थी|

* He had not made plans.

वह योजना नहीं बना चुका था|

* She had not taken meals.

वह भोजन ग्रहण नहीं कर चुकी थी|

* I had not finished my work.

मे अपना कार्य नहीं कर चुका था|

* She had not gone to Mumbai.

वह मुंबई नहीं गयी थी|

* Sukant had not behaved like this.

सुकान्त ऐसा बर्ताब नहीं कर चुका था|

* Mithilesh had not broken all relations.

मिथिलेश सारे रिश्ते नहीं तोड़ चुका था|

* I had not conducted an experiment.

मे एक प्रयोग नहीं कर चुका था|

* Simran had not answered the question.

सिमरन जवाब नहीं दे चुकी थी|

* I had not declared the result.

मे फल घोषित नहीं कर चुका था|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +had + not +3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* They had not won the competition.

वे प्रतियोगिता नहीं जीत चुके थे|

* We had not got the chance.

हमे मौका नहीं मिल चुका था|

* You had not heard the radio.

तुम रेडियो नहीं सुन चुके थे|

* They had not asked about me.

वे मेरे वारे मे नहीं पुछ चुके थे|

* We had not caught the culprit.

हम दोषी को नहीं पकड़ चुके थे|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Had + Subject (I, he, she or any name) + 3rdform of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Had she solved such sums before?

क्या वह गणित समाधान कर चुकी थी?

* Had he made plans?

क्या वह योजना बना चुका था?

* Had she taken meals?

क्या वह भोजन ग्रहण कर चुकी थी?

* Had I finished my work?

क्या मे अपना कार्य कर चुका था?

* Had she gone to Mumbai?

क्या वह मुंबई गयी थी?

* Had Sukant behaved like this?

क्या सुकान्त ऐसा बर्ताब कर चुका था?

* Had Mithilesh broken all relations?

क्या मिथिलेश सारे रिश्ते तोड़ चुका था?

* Had I conducted an experiment?

क्या मे एक प्रयोग कर चुका था?

* Had Simran answered the question?

क्या सिमरन जवाब दे चुकी थी?

* Had I declared the result?

क्या मे फल घोषित कर चुका था?

**Rule 2:-**Had + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +1st form of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example–

* Had they won the competition?

क्या वे प्रतियोगिता जीत चुके थे?

* Had we got the chance?

क्या हमे मौका मिल चुका था?

* Had you heard the radio?

क्या तुम रेडियो सुन चुके थे?

* Had they asked about me?

क्या वे मेरे वारे मे पुछ चुके थे?

* Had we caught the culprit?

क्या हम दोषी को पकड़ चुके थे?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Had + Subject (I, he, she or any name) +not + 3rd form of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Had she not solved such sums before?

क्या वह गणित समाधान नहीं कर चुकी थी?

* Had he not made plans?

क्या वह योजना नहीं बना चुका था?

* Had she not taken meals?

क्या वह भोजन ग्रहण नहीं कर चुकी थी?

* Had I not finished my work?

क्या मे अपना कार्य नहीं कर चुका था?

* Had she not gone to Mumbai?

क्या वह मुंबई नहीं गयी थी?

* Had Sukant not behaved like this?

क्या सुकान्त ऐसा बर्ताब नहीं कर चुका था?

* Had Mithilesh not broken all relations?

क्या मिथिलेश सारे रिश्ते नहीं तोड़ चुका था?

* Had I not conducted an experiment?

क्या मे एक प्रयोग नहीं कर चुका था?

* Had Simran not answered the question?

क्या सिमरन जवाब नहीं दे चुकी थी?

* Had I not declared the result?

क्या मे फल घोषित नहीं कर चुका था?

**Rule 2:-**Had + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +not +3rd form of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example-

* Had they not won the competition?

क्या वे प्रतियोगिता नहीं जीत चुके थे?

* Had we not got the chance?

क्या हमे मौका नहीं मिल चुका था?

* Had you not heard the radio?

क्या तुम रेडियो नहीं सुन चुके थे?

* Had they not asked about me?

क्या वे मेरे वारे मे नहीं पुछ चुके थे?

* Had we not caught the culprit?

क्या हम दोषी को नहीं पकड़ चुके थे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * I had wonthe election. * Had we made enough revenue? * You had got married. * Had they not arrived yet? * She had paid the money. * Had she seen the movie? * Had the government declared the bill? * We had canceled the ticket. * Binu had run before they come. * Had I tried hard? * I had succeeded in the mission. * Had you not celebrated the occasion? Had we not proved the case? * Had you called off their strike? * Had they eaten their breakfast? * She had sung the song. * They had gone * She had bought a new car * She had gone shopping. * I had my food * Ashwani has slept * My Manage had left for the day * It had rained. * They had finished their food * I had finished my bath * He had visited Dubai * They had gone to Chandigarh * She had sung this song many time * He had fallen ill * I had not seen you for a long time * I had conveyed my message to her * I had never seen such a beautiful bird * I had never seen such a beautiful place * Had you been to Chandigarh * Had they ever played golf? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * मैं उसे पहले ही चॉक्लेट वापस कर चुका था| * क्या तुम नाचने का अभ्यास कर चुके थे? * वह स्तुति से शादी कर चुका था| * हम खाना बना चुके थे| * कृति अनुवाद कर चुका था| * वह एक कलाम खरीद चुका था| * क्या हम खेल रहे थे? * क्या तुम सूचना दे चुके थे? * वह कविता सीख चुका था| * मुझे नींद आ चुकी थी| * क्या वे मेरा मज़ाक उड़ा रहे थे? * वह मुझे बुला रहा था| * क्या तुम हस चुके थे? * वह इधर ही आ रहा था| * हम उससे मिल चुके थे| |

### Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

Past perfect continuous tense represents an action that was already finished in the past time (an action that was completed sometime in the past time frame).

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भूत काल मे चलते रहने को पाया जाता है ।

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘रहाथा,‘रहीथी’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + been + first form of Main Verb + ing +Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| I/He / She /It or Any Name.(Singular) | Had been |
| You/We/They (Plural) | Had been |

Example:-

Nilima had been playing with her toy since morning.

नीलिमासूबहउसकीखिलौनेकेसाथखेलरहीथी|

They had been waiting for me for ten minutes.

वे१०मिनटसेमेरेलिएइंतज़ारकररहेथे|

We had been washing their clothes for three hours.

हम३घंटोंसेउनकेकपड़ेधोरहेथे|

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Subject (I , he , she or any name) + had + been + first form of verb + ing + object(if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* She had been walking on the footpath since 1 hour.

वहएकघंटेसेफूट-पाथपरचलरहीथी|

* He had been running on the field for 30 minutes.

वह३०मिनटसेमैदानमेदौड़रहाथा|

* She had been typing on a computer since 12 minutes.

वह१२मिनटसेकम्प्युटरमेटाइपिंगकररहीथी|

* I had been telephoning since morning.

मेसुबहसेटेलीफोनकररहाथा|

* She had been going to Shimla for five months.

वह५महीनेसेशिमलाजारहीथी|

* Roshan had been bathing for ten minutes.

रोशनदसमिनटसेनहारहाथा|

* Mona had been chatting with her friends for an hour.

मोनाएकघंटेकेलिएअपनीदोस्तोंसेचेटिंगकररहीथी|

* I had been cooking food since 5 hours.

मे५घंटेसेखानाबनारहाथा|

* Mimesh had been reading the book for 7 hours.

मीमेश७घंटेसेकिताबपढ़रहाथा|

* I had been searching for my watch for 20 minutes.

मे२०मिनटकेलिएअपनीघड़ीढूंढरहाथा|

**Rule 2:-** Subject (not study We, They or plural number) + hadbeen +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* They had been taking part in the race for many years.

वेदौड़मेबहतसालोंसेहिस्सालेरहेथे|

* We had been wearing woolens since December.

हमदिसम्बरसेगर्मकपड़ापहनरहेथे|

* You had been teaching me for one year.

तुममुझेएकसालसेपढ़ारहेथे|

* They had been laughing since last night.

वेकलरातसेहसरहेथे|

* We had been talking with them for two years.

हमउनसेदोसालसेबातकररहेथे|

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (I, he, she or any name) +had + not + been + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* She had not been walking on the footpath since 1 hour.

वहएकघंटेसेफूट-पाथपरनहींचलरहीथी|

* He had not been running on the field for 30 minutes.

वह३०मिनटसेमैदानमेनहींदौड़रहाथा|

* She had not been typing on a computer since 12 minutes.

वह१२मिनटसेकम्प्युटरमेटाइपिंगनहींकररहीथी|

* I had not been telephoning since morning.

मेसुबहसेटेलीफोननहींकररहाथा|

* She had not been going to Shimla for five months.

वह५महीनेसेशिमलानहींजारहीथी|

* Roshan had been bathing for ten minutes.

रोशनदसमिनटसेनहींनहारहाथा|

* Mona had not been chatting with her friends for an hour.

मोनाएकघंटेकेलिएअपनीदोस्तोंसेचेटिंगनहींकररहीथी|

* I had not been cooking food since 5 hours.

मे५घंटेसेखानानहींबनारहाथा|

* Mimesh had not been reading the book for 7 hours.

मीमेश७घंटेसेकिताबनहींपढ़रहाथा|

* I had not been searching my watch for 20 minutes.

मे२०मिनटकेलिएअपनीघड़ीनहींढूंढरहाथा|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (You , We , They or plural number) +had + notbeen +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* They had not been taking part in race for many years.

वेदौड़मेबहतसालोंसेहिस्सानहींलेरहेथे|

* We had not been wearing woolens since December.

हमदिसम्बरसेगर्मकपड़ानहींपहनरहेथे|

* You had not been teaching me for one year.

तुममुझेएकसालसेनहींपढ़ारहेथे|

* They had not been laughing since last night.

वेकलरातसेनहींहसरहेथे|

* We had not been talking with them for two years.

हमउनसेदोसालसेबातनहींकररहेथे|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Had + Subject (I, he, she or any name) + been + first form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Had he been walking on the footpath since 1 hour?

क्यावहएकघंटेसेफूट-पाथपरचलरहीथी?

* Had he been running on the field for 30 minutes?

क्यावह३०मिनटसेमैदानमेदौड़रहाथा?

* Had she been typing on computer since 12 minutes?

क्यावह१२मिनटसेकम्प्युटरमेटाइपिंगकररहीथी?

* Had I been telephoning since morning?

क्यामेसुबहसेटेलीफोनकररहाथा?

* Had she been going to Shimla for five months?

क्यावह५महीनेसेशिमलाजारहीथी?

* Had Roshan been bathing for ten minutes?

क्यारोशनदसमिनटसेनहारहाथा?

* Had Mona been chatting with her friends for an hour?

क्यामोनाएकघंटेकेलिएअपनीदोस्तोंसेचेटिंगकररहीथी?

* Had I been cooking food since 5 hours?

क्यामे५घंटेसेखानाबनारहाथा?

* Had Mimesh been reading book for 7 hours?

क्यामीमेश७घंटेसेकिताबपढ़रहाथा?

* Had I been searching my watch for 20 minutes?

क्यामे२०मिनटकेलिएअपनीघड़ीढूंढरहाथा

**Rule 2:-** Had + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) + been +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any**)?**

Rule 2 Example–

* Had they been taking part in race for many years?

क्यावेदौड़मेबहतसालोंसेहिस्सालेरहेथे?

* Had we been wearing woolens since December?

क्याहमदिसम्बरसेगर्मकपड़ापहनरहेथे?

* Had you been teaching me for one year?

क्यातुममुझेएकसालसेपढ़ारहेथे?

* Had they been laughing since last night?

क्यावेकलरातसेहसरहेथे?

* Had we been talking with them for two years?

क्याहमउनसेदोसालसेबातकररहेथे?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Had + Subject (I, he, she or any name) +not + been + first form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Had she not been walking on the footpath since 1 hour?

क्यावहएकघंटेसेफूट-पाथपरनहींचलरहीथी?

* Had he not been running on the field for 30 minutes?

क्यावह३०मिनटसेमैदानमेनहींदौड़रहाथा?

* Had she not been typing on computer since 12 minutes?

क्यावह१२मिनटसेकम्प्युटरमेटाइपिंगनहींकररहीथी?

* Had I not been telephoning since morning?

क्यामेसुबहसेटेलीफोननहींकररहाथा?

* Had she not been going to Shimla for five months?

क्यावह५महीनेसेशिमलानहींजारहीथी?

* Had Roshan been bathing for ten minutes?

क्यारोशनदसमिनटसेनहींनहारहाथा?

* Had Mona not been chatting with her friends for an hour?

क्यामोनाएकघंटेकेलिएअपनीदोस्तोंसेचेटिंगनहींकररहीथी?

* Had I not been cooking food since 5 hours?

क्यामे५घंटेसेखानानहींबनारहाथा?

* Had Mimesh not been reading book for 7 hours?

क्यामीमेश७घंटेसेकिताबनहींपढ़रहाथा?

* Had I not been searching my watch for 20 minutes?

क्यामे२०मिनटकेलिएअपनीघड़ीनहींढूंढरहाथा?

**Rule 2:-**Had + Subject (You, We, They or plural number) +not + been +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example-

* Had they not been taking part in race for many years?

क्यावेदौड़मेबहतसालोंसेहिस्सानहींलेरहेथे?

* Had we not been wearing woolens since December?

क्याहमदिसम्बरसेगर्मकपड़ानहींपहनरहेथे?

* Had you not been teaching me for one year?

क्यातुममुझेएकसालसेनहींपढ़ारहेथे?

* Had they not been laughing since last night?

क्यावेकलरातसेनहींहसरहेथे?

* Had we not been talking with them for two years?

क्याहमउनसेदोसालसेबातनहींकररहेथे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * I had been searching for a job for 6 months. * Had we been wandering since last night? * You had been traveling in Mumbai since 1 month. * Had they not been working hard for many years? * She had been washing his clothes for 1 hour. * Had she been preparing for marriage since august? * Had the players been showing eagerness to play from the beginning of the game? * We had been watching this since two weeks. * Mini had been dancing for half an hour. * Had I not been trying to write a book for four years? * I had been planning to go abroad for 10 years. * Had you not been running this shop since a decade? * Had we not been feeling emotional changes in him? * Had you been arguing with that salesman since two hours? * Had they getting training for 2 years? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * मैंशामसेयहाँपरबैठकरहसरहाथा| * क्यातुमदोमहीनेसेलढरहेथे? * वेसुबहसेटीवीदेखरहेथे| * हमकलरातसेभागरहेथे| * सोमू४घंटेसेसब्जीखरीदरहाथा| * वहएकमहीनेसेसाइकलनहींचलारहाथा| * क्याहम१तैररहेथे? * क्याहमरातसेसोरहेथे? * वहदोदिनसेनहींउठाथा| * मुझेबुधबारबुखारनहींहोरहाथा| * क्यावेमेरीमददनहींकररहेथे| * वहमेरा८घंटेसेइंतेजारकररहाथा| * क्यामेसोमबारसेकॉलेजजारहाथा? * वहआधे-घंटेसेझगड़रहेथे| * हमकलरातसेबहतदुखीथे| |

### Simple Future Tense.

Simple future tense represents an action that will happen in the near future (It also require an auxiliary verb to make the sentence meaningful.)

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘गा’,‘गी’,‘गे’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भविष्य काल मे होना या करने का बोध मिलता है|

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + first form of Main Verb +Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| You/They/He /She or Any Name.(Singular) | Will |
| I/We | WillorShall |

Example:-

He will stay here.

वह यहाँ ठहरेगा|

She will sing.

वह गाएगी|

You will drink.

तुम पियोगे।

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will + first form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* He will think in themotel.

वह होटल मे सोचेगा|

* They will win the game.

वे गेम को जीत जाएंगे|

* She will look after the baby.

वह बच्चे का ध्यान रख पाएगी|

* You will take the money.

तुम पैसे ले जाओगे|

* He will purchase a new suit.

वह एक नयी सूट खरीद लेगा|

* She will help us.

वह हमारी मदद करेगी|

* They will visit the fair.

वे मेला घूमने जाएंगे|

* You will pay the bill.

तुम बिल भरोगे|

* He will tell the truth.

वह सच बोलेगा|

* We will speak to that person.

हम उस आदमी से बात करेंगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I , We) + Will/Shall +1st form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall accompany you.

मे आपके साथ जाऊंगा|

* We shall get the fruit in this market.

हमको इस बाजार मे फल मिल जाएगा|

* I will take part in the rally.

मे रेली मे हिस्सा लूँगा|

* We will fight.

हम लढ़ेंगे|

* We shall run.

हम दौड़ेंगे|

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will + not + first form of verb + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* He will not think in themotel.

वह होटल मे नहीं सोचेगा|

* They will not win the game.

वे गेम को नहीं जीत जाएंगे|

* She will not look after the baby.

वह बच्चे का ध्यान नहीं रख पाएगी|

* You will not take the money.

तुम पैसे नहीं ले जाओगे|

* He will not purchase a new suit.

वह एक नयी सूट नहीं खरीद लेगा|

* She will not help us.

वह हमारी मदद नहीं करेगी|

* They will not visit the fair.

वे मेला घूमने नहीं जाएंगे|

* You will not pay the bill.

तुम बिल नहीं भरोगे|

* He will not tell the truth.

वह सच नहीं बोलेगा|

* We will not speak to that person.

हम उस आदमी से बात नहीं करेंगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I, We) + Will/Shall + not +1st form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall not accompany you.

मे आपके साथ नहीं जाऊंगा|

* We shall not get the fruit in this market.

हमको इस बाजार मे फल नहीं मिल जाएगा|

* I will not take part in the rally.

मे रेली मे हिस्सा नहीं लूँगा|

* We will not fight.

हम नहीं लढ़ेंगे|

* We shall not run.

हम नहीं दौड़ेंगे|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + first form of verb + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will he think in themotel?

क्या वह होटल मे सोचेगा?

* Will they win the game?

क्या वे गेम को जीत जाएंगे?

* Will she look after the baby?

क्या वह बच्चे का ध्यान रख पाएगी?

* Will you take the money?

क्या तुम पैसे ले जाओगे?

* Will he purchase a new suit?

क्या वह एक नयी सूट खरीद लेगा?

* Will she help us?

क्या वह हमारी मदद करेगी?

* Will they visit the fair?

क्या वे मेला घूमने जाएंगे?

* Will you pay the bill?

क्या तुम बिल भरोगे?

* Will he tell the truth?

क्या वह सच बोलेगा?

* Will we speak to that person?

क्या हम उस आदमी से बात करेंगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We)+1st form of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example–

* Shall I accompany you?

क्या मे आपके साथ जाऊंगा?

* Shall we get the fruit in this market?

क्या हमको इस बाजार मे फल मिल जाएगा?

* Will I take part in the rally?

क्या मे रेली मे हिस्सा लूँगा?

* Will we fight?

क्या हम लढ़ेंगे?

* Shall we run?

क्या हम दौड़ेंगे?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-** Will + Subject (You , They , He , She or any name) + not + first form of verb + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* 1)Will, he did not think in themotel?

क्या वह होटल मे नहीं सोचेगा?

* 2) Will they not win the game?

क्या वे गेम को नहीं जीत जाएंगे?

* 3) Will, she not look after the baby?

क्या वह बच्चे का नहीं ध्यान रख पाएगी?

* 4) Will, you not take the money?

क्या तुम पैसे नहीं ले जाओगे?

* Will, he not purchase a new suit?

क्या वह एक नयी सूट नहीं खरीद लेगा?

* Will, she not help us?

क्या वह हमारी नहीं मदद करेगी?

* Will, they did not visit the fair?

क्या वे मेला नहीं घूमने जाएंगे?

* Will, you did not pay the bill?

क्या तुम बिल नहीं भरोगे?

* Will, he not tell the truth?

क्या वह सच नहीं बोलेगा?

* Will we not speak to that person?

क्या हम उस आदमी से बात नहीं करेंगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We)+1st form of verb + not + object (if any)?

Example-

* + - * Shall I not accompany you?

क्या मे आपके साथ नहीं जाऊंगा?

* Shall we not get the fruit in this market?

क्या हमको इस बाजार मे फल नहीं मिल जाएगा?

* Will, I did not take part in the rally?

क्या मे रेली मे हिस्सा नहीं लूँगा?

* Will, we not fight?

क्या हम नहीं लढ़ेंगे?

* Shall we not run?

क्या हम नहीं दौड़ेंगे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI.**   * You will help her later. * Shall I send you the book? * They will translate the thesis. * We will make the dinner. * Will you help me move this heavy chair? * She will not do all the housework. * Will they decide to come here? * I will travel for the next year. * He will clean up my room. * The doorbell is ringing. You will get it. * Will be there for hours doing nothing? * It will get more difficult. * He will always angry when we are sleeping. * Will I regret? * Will we do a mistake? * Nishant will start a business. * He will write me a letter. * I shall write me a letter to our Prime Minister. * I shall buy a new car. * Final Exam will happen in March. * My brother will come to my school tomorrow. * My Uncle will come to Delhi tomorrow. * India will play in final with Australia tomorrow * Looks like Kohli will hit 100 in the final match * Ruchi will talk to me. * She will not disappoint me. * I shall buy the iPhone 7 today. * You will come to Spokeies in evening * My brother will go to my village * He will look after my Grandmother * Rain will rain stop till 5 pm. * Match will start after 5 pm. * It will take time to reach the office. * we will have lunch outside Today * Our good time will come | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * क्या वह गांधी जयंती मे भाषण नहीं देंगे? * क्या वे जहाज से जाएंगे? * तुम हमारे साथ दोगे| * मे तुमसे से सिकायत नहीं करूंगी| * क्या में ११ बजे तक नहीं पहुँच जाऊंगा? * हम जरूर बदला लेंगे| * वह सरकार के आदेश जरूर मानेगा| * पुलिस अपराधियों को जरूर पकड़ेगी| * भारत जरूर उन्नति करेगा| * मे जरूर आगे बढ़ूँगा| * क्या वे नदी पार कर पाएंगे? * क्या तुम किराया दोगे? * वह सीढ़िया चढ़ नहीं पाएगी| * भारतीय जनता नहीं सहेगी| * हम उससे विबाद नहीं करेंगे| |

### Future Continuous Tense

Future continuous tense represents an action that will be going on in future (It work will occur at some point in future time.)

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘रहाहोगा’,‘रहीहोगी’,‘रहाहुंगा’,‘रहेहोंगे’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भविष्य काल मे होना या भविष्य मे कार्य के चलते रहने का बोध मिलता है|

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + first form of Main Verb +ing + Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| You/They/He /She or Any Name.(Singular) | Will be |
| I/We | Willbe orShall be |

Example:-

He will be selling his camera.

वह अपना कैमरा बेच रहा होगा|

She will be bringing the jug.

वह जग ला रही होगी|

You will be correcting my exam paper.

तुम मेरे परीक्षा खाता को सुधार रहे होगे|

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will be + first form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* He will be serving the nation.

वह देश की सेवा कर रहा होगा|

* They will be working regularly.

वे नियमित कार्य कर रहे होंगे|

* She will be planning to see the prime minister.

वह प्रधाम मंत्री जी से मिलने की योजना बना रही होगी|

* You will be celebrating Holi.

तुम होली मना रहे होगे|

* He will be wasting time.

वह समय बर्बाद कर रहा होगा|

* She will be learning sewing.

वह सिलाई सीख रही होगी|

* They will be waiting for a meeting.

वे मीटिंग के लिए इंतेजार कर रहे होंगे|

* You will be quarreling with your sister.

तुम अपनी बहन से झगड़ा कर रहे होगे|

* He will be cuttingthe crop.

वह फसल की कटाई कर रहा होगा|

* We will be sowing the seed.

हम वीज बो रहे होंगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I , We) + Will/Shall + be +1st form of verb + ing object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall be supervising the workers.

मे कर्मियों की ऊपर पर्यबेक्षण कर रहा हुंगा|

* We shall be appreciating their success.

हम उनके सफलता की तारीफ कर रहे होंगे|

* I will be buying in this project.

मे इस प्रकल्प को खरीद रहा हुंगा|

* We will be climbing the mountain.

हम पर्वत चढ़ रहे होंगे|

* We shall be watching the programme.

हम कार्यक्रम देख रहे होंगे|

1. **NegativeSentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will + not + be + first form of verb +ing + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* He will not be serving the nation.

वह देश की सेवा नहीं कर रहा होगा|

* They will not be working regularly.

वे नियमित कार्य नहीं कर रहे होंगे|

* She will not be planning to see the prime minister.

वह प्रधाम मंत्री जी से मिलने की योजना नहीं बना रही होगी|

* You will not be celebrating Holi.

तुम होली नहीं मना रहे होगे|

* He will not be wasting time.

वह समय बर्बाद नहीं कर रहा होगा|

* She will not be learning sewing.

वह सिलाई नहीं सीख रही होगी|

* They will not be waiting for a meeting.

वे मीटिंग के लिए इंतेजार नहीं कर रहे होंगे|

* You will not be quarreling with your sister.

तुम अपनी बहन से झगड़ा नहीं कर रहे होगे|

* He will not be cuttingthe crop.

वह फसल की कटाई नहीं कर रहा होगा|

* We will not be sowing the seed.

हम वीज बो नहीं रहे होंगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I, We) + Will/Shall + not + be + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall not be supervising the workers.

मे कर्मियों की ऊपर पर्यबेक्षण नहीं कर रहा हुंगा|

* We shall not be appreciating their success.

हम उनके सफलता की तारीफ नहीं कर रहे होंगे|

* I will not be buying in this project.

मे इस प्रकल्प को नहीं खरीद रहा हुंगा|

* We will not be climbing the mountain.

हम पर्वत नहीं चढ़ रहे होंगे|

* We shall not be watching the programme.

हम कार्यक्रम देख नहीं रहे होंगे|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You , They , He , She or any name) + be + first form of verb + ing +object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will he be serving the nation?

क्या वह देश की सेवा कर रहा होगा?

* Will they be working regularly?

क्या वे नियमित कार्य कर रहे होंगे?

* Will she be planning to see the prime minister?

क्या वह प्रधाम मंत्री जी से मिलने की योजना बना रही होगी?

* Will you be celebrating holi?

क्या तुम होली मना रहे होगे?

* Will he be wasting time?

क्या वह समय बर्बाद कर रहा होगा?

* Will she be learning sewing?

क्या वह सिलाई सीख रही होगी?

* Will they be waiting for the meeting?

क्या वे मीटिंग के लिए इंतेजार कर रहे होंगे?

* Will you be quarreling with your sister?

क्या तुम अपनी बहन से झगड़ा कर रहे होगे?

* Will he be cuttingthe crop?

क्या वह फसल की कटाई कर रहा होगा?

* Will we be sowing the seed?

क्या हम वीज बो रहे होंगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I, We)+ be +1st form of verb + ing +Object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example-

* Shall I be supervising the workers?

क्या मे कर्मियों की ऊपर पर्यबेक्षण कर रहा हुंगा?

* Shall we be appreciating their success?

क्या हम उनके सफलता की तारीफ कर रहे होंगे?

* Will I be buying in this project?

क्या मे इस प्रकल्प को खरीद रहा हुंगा?

* Will we be climbing the mountain?

क्या हम पर्वत चढ़ रहे होंगे?

* Will we be watching the programme?

क्या हम कार्यक्रम देख रहे होंगे?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You , They , He , She or any name) + not + be + first form of verb + ing + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will he not be serving the nation?

क्या वह देश की सेवा नहीं कर रहा होगा?

* Will they not be working regularly?

क्या वे नियमित कार्य नहीं कर रहे होंगे?

* Will she not be planning to see the prime minister?

क्या वह प्रधाम मंत्री जी से मिलने की योजना नहीं बना रही होगी?

* Will you not be celebrating holi?

क्या तुम होली नहीं मना रहे होगे?

* Will he not be wasting time?

वह समय बर्बाद नहीं कर रहा होगा?

* Will she not be learning sewing?

क्या वह सिलाई नहीं सीख रही होगी?

* Will they not be waiting for the meeting?

क्या वे मीटिंग के लिए इंतेजार नहीं कर रहे होंगे?

* Will you not be quarreling with your sister?

क्या तुम अपनी बहन से झगड़ा नहीं कर रहे होगे?

* Will he not be cuttingthe crop?

क्या वह फसल की कटाई नहीं कर रहा होगा?

* Will we not be sowing the seed?

क्याहम वीज नहीं बो रहे होंगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We)+ not + be + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Example-

* Shall I not be supervising the workers?

क्या मे कर्मियों की ऊपर पर्यबेक्षण नहीं कर रहा हुंगा?

* Shall we not be appreciating their success?

क्या हम उनके सफलता की तारीफ नहीं कर रहे होंगे?

* Will I not be buying in this project?

क्या मे इस प्रकल्प को नहीं खरीद रहा हुंगा?

* Will we not be climbing the mountain?

क्या हम पर्वत नहीं चढ़ रहे होंगे?

* Will we not be watching the programme?

क्या हम कार्यक्रम नहीं देख रहे होंगे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI.**   * Will the court not be settling the dispute? * They will be watching the Superman movie. * You will be whitewashing your house. * Will we not be taking part in Navy? * I will not be getting new clothes stitched. * She will be training for IPS. * Shall I be singing a song? * Will you be looking after your parents? * We shall be doing social work. * I shall be going to Chennai tomorrow. * Eli will be doing well. * The employees will not be working in the office. * You will not be reading the magazine. * I shall not be gambling. * Will you not be contributing for this? * I shall be felling well tomorrow. * He will be drinking water. * Sunita will be having food. * My uncle will be coming to my school tomorrow. * I shall be waiting for you. * Manendra will be enjoying his vacations. * It will be raining tomorrow. * I shall be changing my job by this time. * You will be calling your yonder brother. * I shall be watching the movie in the afternoon. * You will be walking in the morning | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * में कलाकारी कर रहा हुंगा| * हम बातें कर रहे होंगे| * क्या संसद सदस्य संसद मे बहस नहीं कर रहे होंगे? * क्या मे तुम्हारी प्रतीक्ष्य कर रहा हुंगा? * तुम देश के लिए प्रतिनिधित्व कर रहे होगे| * वे सौदेबाजी कर रहे होंगे| * वह एक सपना देख रही होगी| * क्या हम प्रयत्न नहीं कर रहे होंगे? * मालिक नौकर तो आदेश दे रहा होगा| * वह शिकार कर रहा होगा| * चौकीदार पहरा नहीं दे रहा होगा| * क्या मे पढ़ रहा हुंगा? * तुम उसकी तरफ दौड़ रहे होगे| * हम उसके ऊपर आलोचना कर रहे होंगे| * वे पौधे को सजा रहे होंगे| |

### Future Perfect Tense

Future perfect tense represents an action that will happen before another action in the future (It expresses the meaning of completion of action occur in the future.)

इसप्रकारकेवाक्योंकोहमइनकेअंतिमहिस्सोको (वाक्योंकेआखरीहिस्से) देखकरपहचानसकतेहैं|ऐसेवाक्योंकेअंतिमछोरपर‘चुकेगा’,‘चुकुगा’,‘चुकोगे’आदिशब्दपायेजातेहै।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का एक निर्धारित समय से पहले होने का बोध मिलता है/

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + 3rd form of Main Verb +Object**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| You/They/He /She or Any Name.(Singular) | Will have. |
| I/We | Will haveorShall have |

Example:-

He will have eaten cake.

वह केक खा चुका हूंगा|

She will have gone to university.

वह विश्वविद्यालय जा चुकी होगी|

You will have played basketball.

तुम क्रिकेट खेल चुके होगे|

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will have + 3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* She will have learned her poem before you come.

वह आपके आने तक अपनी कविता याद कर चुकी होगी|

* They will have taken our food before it is eleven.

वे ११ बजे तक हमारा खाना ले चुके होंगे|

* He will have picked your mobile before you come.

वह आपके आने तक आपकी फोन उठा चुका होगा|

* We will have drunk milk before he sleeps.

हम उसके सोने तक दूध पी चुके होंगे|

* They will have finished my work before the teacher comes.

वे शिक्षक जी के आने तक मेरा कार्य कर चुके होंगे|

* She will have bought the tickets before the train arrives.

वह ट्रेन के आने तक टिकिट खरीद चुकी होगी|

* We will have punished your son before they come.

हम उनके आने तक आपके पुत्र को दंडित कर चुके होंगे|

* He will have written the letter before she comes.

वह उसके आने तक अपना पत्र लिख चुका होगा|

* She will have received her promotion by next year.

वह अगले साल तक अपनी पदोन्नति ले चुकी होगी|

* He will have stayed in London by 2022.

वह २०२२ तक लंदन मे रह चुका होगा|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I, We) + Will/Shall have +3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I will have worked here for 20 years by 2021.

मे २०२१ तक यहाँ २० साल कार्य कर चुका होंगा|

* I shall have taken bath by the time they come.

मे उनके आने तक अपना स्नान कर चुका हुंगा|

* We shall have returned within two hours.

हम दो घंटे के अंदर वापस आ चुके होंगे|

* We will have married within four years.

हम चार सालों के अंदर शादी कर चुके होंगे|

* We will have started our shop by next month.

हम अगले महीने तक हमारा दुकान शुरू कर चुके होंगे|

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will + not + have + 3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* She will not have learned her poem before you come.

वह आपके आने तक अपनी कविता याद नहीं कर चुकी होगी|

* They will not have taken our food before it is eleven.

वे ११ बजे तक हमारा खाना नहीं ले चुके होंगे|

* He will not have picked your mobile before you come.

वह आपके आने तक आपकी फोन नहीं उठा चुका होगा|

* We will not have drunk milk before he sleeps.

हम उसके सोने तक दूध नहीं पी चुके होंगे|

* They will not have finished my work before the teacher comes.

वे शिक्षक जी के आने तक मेरा कार्य नहीं कर चुके होंगे|

* She will not have bought the tickets before the train arrives.

वह ट्रेन के आने तक टिकिट नहीं खरीद चुकी होगी|

* We will not have punished your son before they come.

हम उनके आने तक आपके पुत्र को दंडित नहीं कर चुके होंगे|

* He will not have written the letter before she comes.

वह उसके आने तक अपना पत्र लिख नहीं चुका होगा|

* She will not have received her promotion by next year.

वह अगले साल तक अपनी पदोन्नति ले नहीं चुकी होगी|

* He will not have stayed in London by 2022.

वह २०२२ तक लंदन मे रह नहीं चुका होगा|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I, We) + Will/Shall + not + have + 3rd form of verb + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I will not have worked here for 20 years by 2021.

मे २०२१ तक यहाँ २० साल कार्य नहीं कर चुका होंगा|

* I shall not have taken bath by the time they come.

मे उनके आने तक अपना स्नान नहीं कर चुका हुंगा|

* We shall not have returned within two hours.

हम दो घंटे के अंदर वापस नहीं आ चुके होंगे|

* We will not have married within four years.

हम चार सालों के अंदर शादी नहीं कर चुके होंगे|

* We will not have started our shop by next month.

हम अगले महीने तक हमारा दुकान शुरू नहीं कर चुके होंगे|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + have + 3rd form of verb + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will she have learned her poem before you come?

क्या वह आपके आने तक अपनी कविता याद कर चुकी होगी?

* Will they have taken our food before it is eleven?

क्या वे ११ बजे तक हमारा खाना ले चुके होंगे?

* Will he have picked your mobile before you come?

क्या वह आपके आने तक आपकी फोन उठा चुका होगा?

* Will we have drunk milk before he sleeps?

क्या हम उसके सोने तक दूध पी चुके होंगे?

* Will they have finished my work before the teacher comes?

क्या वे शिक्षक जी के आने तक मेरा कार्य कर चुके होंगे?

* Will she have bought the tickets before the train arrives?

क्या वह ट्रेन के आने तक टिकिट खरीद चुकी होगी?

* Will we have punished your son before they come?

क्या हम उनके आने तक आपके पुत्र को दंडित कर चुके होंगे?

* Will he have written the letter before she comes?

क्या वह उसके आने तक अपना पत्र लिख चुका होगा?

* Will she have received her promotion by next year?

क्या वह अगले साल तक अपनी पदोन्नति ले चुकी होगी?

* Will he have stayed in London by 2022?

क्या वह २०२२ तक लंदन मे रह चुका होगा?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We)+have + 3rd form of verb + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example–

* Will I have worked here for 20 years by 2021?

क्या मे २०२१ तक यहाँ २० साल कार्य कर चुका होंगा?

* Shall I have taken bath by the time they come?

क्या मे उनके आने तक अपना स्नान कर चुका हुंगा?

* Shall we have returned within two hours?

क्या हम दो घंटे के अंदर वापस आ चुके होंगे?

* Will we have married within four years?

क्या हम चार सालों के अंदर शादी कर चुके होंगे?

* Will we have started our shop by next month?

क्या हम अगले महीने तक हमारा दुकान शुरू कर चुके होंगे?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + nothave + 3rd form of verb + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will, she not have learned her poem before you come?

क्या वह आपके आने तक अपनी कविता याद नहीं कर चुकी होगी?

* Will, they not have taken our food before it is eleven?

क्या वे ११ बजे तक हमारा खाना नहीं ले चुके होंगे?

* Will, he not have picked your mobile before you come?

क्या वह आपके आने तक आपकी फोन नहीं उठा चुका होगा?

* Will, we not have drunk milk before he sleeps?

क्या हम उसके सोने तक दूध नहीं पी चुके होंगे?

* Will, they not have finished my work before the teacher comes?

क्या वे शिक्षक जी के आने तक मेरा कार्य नहीं कर चुके होंगे?

* Will, she not have bought the tickets before the train arrives?

क्या वह ट्रेन के आने तक टिकिट नहीं खरीद चुकी होगी?

* Will, we not have punished your son before they come?

क्या हम उनके आने तक आपके पुत्र को दंडित नहीं कर चुके होंगे?

* Will, he not have written the letter before she comes?

क्या वह उसके आने तक अपना पत्र लिख नहीं चुका होगा?

* Will, she not have received her promotion by next year?

क्या वह अगले साल तक अपनी पदोन्नति ले नहीं चुकी होगी?

* Will, he not have stayed in London by 2022?

क्या वह २०२२ तक लंदन मे रह नहीं चुका होगा?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We) + not + have + 3rd form of verb + not + object (if any)?

Example-

* Will I not have worked here for 20 years by 2021?

क्या मे २०२१ तक यहाँ २० साल कार्य नहीं कर चुका होंगा?

* Shall I not have taken bath by the time they come?

क्या मे उनके आने तक अपना स्नान नहीं कर चुका हुंगा?

* Shall we not have returned within two hours?

क्या हम दो घंटे के अंदर वापस नहीं आ चुके होंगे?

* Will, we not have married within four years?

क्या हम चार सालों के अंदर शादी नहीं कर चुके होंगे?

* Will we not have started our shop by next month?

क्या हम अगले महीने तक हमारा दुकान शुरू नहीं कर चुके होंगे?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * We shall have gone by morning. * They will have arrived home before the rain starts. * You will have completed your journey by day after tomorrow. * Will they have ended their examination by May? * He will not have obtained permission for this. * She will not have returned within one hour. * They will have shorted out their differences. * The visitors will not have bathed. * I will have eaten my dinner. * We will have done our assignment. * Mountaineers will not have climbed the mountain. * Lovely will have got married by next December. * They will have won the championship. * I shall have got a new suit tailored. * Will you have found this? * We shall have finished the job by now. * The snow will have stopped by April. * We will have returned home by five o'clock. * We shall have left now. * He will have left Delhi. * Harindra will have eaten the food. * Will I have joined Spokeies? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * क्या मे अगले वर्ष तक वयस्क नहीं बन जाऊंगा? * हम विचारों की संकीर्णता को त्याग नहीं चुके होंगे| * तुम राहुल को पोलो मे हरा चुके होगे| * क्या सुमिता आपने पति को सुधार नहीं चुकी होगी? * मोलु यहाँ नाच चुका होगा| * विश्वशांति स्थापित हो चुकी होगी| * मे अपने कार्य मे जरूर सफल हो चुका होंगा| * क्या वह सबकुछ वर्बाद नहीं कर चुका होगा? * मे इस कॉलेज मे भर्ती ले चुका हुंगा| * क्या वह २०२४ की विश्व-सुंदरी प्रतियोगिता जीत चुकी होगी? * वह अगले महीने तक पौधे उगा चुका होगा| * हम उनको हरा चुके होंगे| * वह उसको सबक सीखा चुका होगा| * हम आगले साल तक नौकरी प्राप्त कर चुके होंगे| * मे इस युद्ध को जीत चुका होंगा| |

### Future Perfect Progressive Tense/Time.

Future perfect progressive tense represents an action that will already completed in future (It expresses a meaning of completion of an action occur in future.)

इस प्रकार के वाक्यों को हम इनके अंतिम हिस्सो को (वाक्यों के आखरी हिस्से) देख कर पहचान सकते हैं| ऐसे वाक्यों के अंतिम छोर पर ‘रहा होगा ‘ , ‘रही होगी’ , ‘रहा हुंगा’ , ‘रहे होंगे’ आदि शब्द पाये जाते है ।

Important: - इन वाक्यों मे कार्य का भविष्य मे होना या करना का बोध मिलता है जिसमे एक निर्धारित समय भी सूचित होता है|

* **Structure of the sentences:-**

**It is structured like;**

**Subject + AuxiliaryVerb (if needed) + 1st form of Main Verb + ing + Object(time frame).**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Subject** | **Auxiliary Verb** |
| You/They/He /She or Any Name. (Singular) | Will have been |
| I/We | Will have beenorShall have been |

Example:-

He will have been living in Mexico for four years.

वह चार साल से मेक्सिको मे रह रहा होगा|

She will have been decorating the hall for two weeks.

वह दो हफ़्तो से हल सजा रही होगी|

You will have been making preparation for war since 2018.

तुम २०१८ से युद्ध के लिए तैयारी कर रहे होगे|

1. **Affirmative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will havebeen + 1stform of verb +ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 1-

* You will have been suffering from fever since Monday.

तुम सोमबार से बुखार से पीड़ित रहे होगे|

* They will have been giving the examination for one hour.

वे एक घंटे से परीक्षा दे रहे होंगे|

* We will have been building your house for 3 years.

हम ३ साल से तुम्हारा घर बना रहे होंगे|

* He will have been reading the story since afternoon.

वह दो-पेहेर से कहानी पढ़ राहा होगा|

* She will have been knitting the sweater since morning.

वह सुबह से गर्म कपड़े की बुनाई कर रही होगी|

* They will have been celebrating their victory since night.

वे रात से अपने विजय का जश्न मना रहे होंगे|

* We will have been struggling for our rights since 6 years.

हम ६ साल से अपने अधिकारों के लिए संघर्ष कर रहे होंगे|

* She will have been watering the plants since evening.

वह शाम से पौधो को पानी दे रही होगी|

* They will have been sleeping since midnight.

वे मध्य-रात्री से सो रहे होंगे|

* You will have been waiting since 8 hours.

तुम ८ घंटे से इंतेजार कर रहे होगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I , We) + Will/Shall have been + 1st form of verb + ing+ object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall have been swimming since 3 hours.

मे ३ घंटे से तैर राहा हुंगा|

* We will have been watching T.V since night.

हम रात से टीवी देख रहे होंगे|

* We shall have been dancing since one hour.

हम एक घंटे से नाच रहे होंगे|

* We will have been taking medicine since July.

हम जुलाई से औषधि ले रहे होंगे|

* I shall have been writingsince one hour.

मे एक घंटे से लिख रहा हुंगा|

1. **Negative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Subject (You, They, He, She or any name) + will + not + have + been +1st form of verb + ing + object (if any).

Rule 1 Example–

* You will not have been suffering from fever since Monday.

तुम सोमबार से बुखार से पीड़ित नहीं रहे होगे|

* They will not have been giving the examination for one hour.

वे एक घंटे से परीक्षा नहीं दे रहे होंगे|

* We will not have been building your house for 3 years.

हम ३ साल से तुम्हारा घर नहीं बना रहे होंगे|

* He will not have been reading the story since afternoon.

वह दो-पेहेर से कहानी नहीं पढ़ राहा होगा|

* She will not have been knitting the sweater since morning.

वह सुबह से गर्म कपड़े की बुनाई नहीं कर रही होगी|

* They will not have been celebrating their victory since night.

वे रात से अपने विजय का जश्न नहीं मना रहे होंगे|

* We will not have been struggling for our rights since 6 years.

हम ६ साल से अपने अधिकारों के लिए संघर्ष नहीं कर रहे होंगे|

* She will not have been watering the plants since evening.

वह शाम से पौधो को पानी नहीं दे रही होगी|

* They will not have been sleeping since midnight.

वे मध्य-रात्री से नहीं सो रहे होंगे|

* You will not have been waiting since 8 hours.

तुम ८ घंटे से इंतेजार नहीं कर रहे होगे|

**Rule 2:-**Subject (I, We) + Will/Shall + not + have + been +1stform of verb + ing + object (if any).

Example of Rule 2:-

* I shall not have been swimming since 3 hours.

मे ३ घंटे से नहीं तैर राहा हुंगा|

* We will not have been watching T.V since night.

हम रात से टीवी नहीं देख रहे होंगे|

* We shall not have been dancing since one hour.

हम एक घंटे से नहीं नाच रहे होंगे|

* We will not have been taking medicine since July.

हम जुलाई से औषधि नहीं ले रहे होंगे|

* I shall not have been writingsince one hour.

मे एक घंटे से नहीं लिख रहा हुंगा|

1. **Interrogative Sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You , They , He , She or any name) + have + been + 1st form of verb + ing + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will you have been suffering from fever since Monday?

क्या तुम सोमबार से बुखार से पीड़ित रहे होगे?

* 2)Will they have been giving the examination for one hour?

क्या वे एक घंटे से परीक्षा दे रहे होंगे?

* Will we have been building your house for 3 years?

क्या हम ३ साल से तुम्हारा घर बना रहे होंगे?

* Will he have been reading the story since afternoon?

क्या वह दो-पेहेर से कहानी पढ़ राहा होगा?

* Will she have been knitting the sweater since morning?

क्या वह सुबह से गर्म कपड़े की बुनाई कर रही होगी?

* Will they have been celebrating their victory since night?

क्या वे रात से अपने विजय का जश्न मना रहे होंगे?

* Will we have been struggling for our rights since 6 years?

क्या हम ६ साल से अपने अधिकारों के लिए संघर्ष कर रहे होंगे?

* Will she have been watering the plants since evening?

क्या वह शाम से पौधो को पानी दे रही होगी?

* Will they have been sleeping since midnight?

क्या वे मध्य-रात्री से सो रहे होंगे?

* Will you have been waiting since 8 hours?

क्या तुम ८ घंटे से इंतेजार कर रहे होगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We)+have+ been + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Rule 2 Example–

* Shall I have been swimming since 3 hours?

क्या मे ३ घंटे से तैर राहा हुंगा?

* Will we have been watching T.V since night?

क्या हम रात से टीवी देख रहे होंगे?

* Shall we have been dancing since one hour?

क्या हम एक घंटे से नाच रहे होंगे?

* Will we have been taking medicine since July?

क्या हम जुलाई से औषधि ले रहे होंगे?

* Shall I have been writingsince one hour?

क्या मे एक घंटे से लिख रहा हुंगा?

1. **Interrogative & negative sentences:-**

**Rule 1:-**Will + Subject (You , They , He , She or any name) + nothave + been + 1st form of verb + ing + object(if any)?

Rule 1 Example –

* Will, you not have been suffering from fever since Monday?

क्या तुम सोमबार से बुखार से पीड़ित नहीं रहे होगे?

* Will, they not have been giving the examination for one hour?

क्या वे एक घंटे से परीक्षा नहीं दे रहे होंगे?

* Will, we not have been building your house for 3 years?

क्या हम ३ साल से तुम्हारा घर नहीं बना रहे होंगे?

* Will, he not have been reading the story since afternoon?

क्या वह दो-पेहेर से कहानी नहीं पढ़ राहा होगा?

* Will, she not have been knitting the sweater since morning?

क्या वह सुबह से गर्म कपड़े की बुनाई नहीं कर रही होगी?

* Will, they not have been celebrating their victory since night?

क्या वे रात से अपने विजय का जश्न नहीं मना रहे होंगे?

* Will, we not have been struggling for our rights since 6 years?

क्या हम ६ साल से अपने अधिकारों के लिए संघर्ष नहीं कर रहे होंगे?

* Will, she not have been watering the plants since evening?

क्या वह शाम से पौधो को पानी नहीं दे रही होगी?

* Will, they not have been sleeping since midnight?

क्या वे मध्य-रात्री से नहीं सो रहे होंगे?

* Will, you not have been waiting since 8 hours?

क्यातुम८घंटेसेइंतेजारनहींकररहेहोगे?

**Rule 2:-**Will/Shall + Subject (I , We) + not + have + been + 1st form of verb + ing + object (if any)?

Example-

* Shall I not have been swimming since 3 hours?

क्या मे ३ घंटे से नहीं तैर राहा हुंगा?

* Will, we not have been watching T.V since night?

क्या हम रात से टीवी नहीं देख रहे होंगे?

* Shall we not have been dancing since one hour?

क्या हम एक घंटे से नहीं नाच रहे होंगे?

* Will, we not have been taking medicine since July?

क्या हम जुलाई से औषधि नहीं ले रहे होंगे?

* Shall I not have been writingsince one hour?

क्या मे एक घंटे से नहीं लिख रहा हुंगा?

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Practice Exercise** | |
| **Translate below in HINDI**   * I will have been living in Bhutan since 2022. * Will he have been playing chess for 4 hours? * They will have been working in this office since Morning. * It will have been raining. * We will have been answering email since 11 o’clock. * You will not have been watching Netflix since evening. * Will they have been walking for two days? * Srikant will have been doing this work. * Will, she not have been to Shimla? * You won’t have been sweeping in the company for 10 years. * She will have been teaching us since last month. * How long will you have been studying when you undergraduate? * No, I will not have been laughing here that long. * She will have been jogging for over an hour. * Will, I shall been be starting the business? | **Translate below in ENGLISH**   * हम दो घंटे तक लढते रहेंगे| * तुम सुबह से रो रहे होगे| * क्या मे दो महीने से दफ्तर मे काम कर रहा हुंगा? * वे चार घंटे से इसे खोज रहा होगा| * वे ४ बजे से समय नष्ट नहीं कर रहा होगा| * कितने लड़के सुबह से शोर नहीं मचाते रहे होंगे? * मेरी बहन दो दिनों से घूम रही होगी| * हम तुम्हारे लिए इतने समय तक नहीं खड़े रहेंगे| * वह तीन घंटे से बैठी होगी| * क्या वे दौड़ रहे होंगे? * मे आराम से सो रहा हुंगा| * वह खुशी से रो रही होगी| * हम उसे ढूंढ रहे होंगे| * क्या तुम उसे नहीं पकड़ रहे होगे? * वे तुमसे बात कर रहे होंगे| |

## Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are Auxiliary verbs (**helping verb)** that provide additional and specific meaning to the main verb of the sentence. Modal verbs are used with other verbs to express **ability, possibility, permission or obligation.**

मोडल क्रियाएं सहायक क्रिया हैं जो वाक्य की मुख्य क्रिया को अतिरिक्त और विशिष्ट अर्थ प्रदान करती हैं।

जैसे: अनुमति, योग्यता, सलाह, दायित्व, निषेध, संभावना या अनुपस्थिति आदि।

* **Characteristics of Modal Verbs.**

1. Modal verbs don’t change their form (spelling) We can’t add “s”,” ed” or ”ing”.

**For Example**

* **Raman can go home**.(correct)
* **Raman can going home**.(incorrect)

here we have two sentence one is correct and another is incorrect.

We can’t add add “s”,” ed” or ”ing”. In modal verbs.

1. Add "not" after the verb is used to make a verb negative.

**For Example**

* **Raman can not go home**.

Here we use ‘not’ befor the verb to make the sentence negative.

1. Model verbs come before the subject in questions.

**For Example**

* **Can I open the window.**

Here we use modal verb befor the before the subject.

1. Infinitives verb without "to" are used right after the modal verb.

**For Example**

* **I must go now**.(correct)
* **I must goto now**.(incorrect)

here we have two sentence one is correct and another is incorrect.

We can’t add “to” with infinitives verb in the sentences where we use modal verbs.

* Use of Modal verb

Basically Modal Verbs are used to express the expressions like

* **Permission**
* **Ability**
* **Obligation**
* **Prohibition**
* **Advice**
* **possibility**
* **probability**
* **Promising**
* Modal Auxiliary Verb list:
* Can
* Could
* May
* Might
* Will
* Would
* Shall
* Should
* Must
* Dare
* Ought To
* Had Better
* Need
* Structure of the sentence

1. Modal Verbs in Active Voice Sentences.

It is structured like

**Subject + Auxiliary Modal Verb + 1st form of Verb + object**

**For Example**

* **Raj could play the piano.**

राज पियानो बजा सकता था।

* **Raman can go home**.

रमन घर जा सकता है।

* **Rajat can run.**

रजतदौड़सकताहैं।

1. Modal Verbs In Negative Sentences.

It is structured like

**Subject + Modal Verb + not + 1st form of Verb + object**

**For Example**

* Raj ****must not**** walk on the field. (Raj mustn't walk on the field.)

राज को मैदान मै नहीं चलना चाहिए।

* Raman ****cannot**** run fast. (Raman can't run fast.)

रमन तेजी से नहीं चल सकता।

* He ****should not**** be late. (Rajat shouldn't be late.)

रजतकोदेरनहींकरनीचाहिए।

1. Modal Verbs in Questions.

It is structured like

**Modal Verb + Subject + 1st form of Verb + object**

**For Example**

* ****May****I come in?

क्या मैं अंदर आ सकता हूँ?

* *Can* I open the window?

क्या मैं खिड़की खोल सकता हूं?

* ****Would****you like to play the piano?

क्या आप पियानो बजाना चाहेंगे?

### Uses Of Can

Expressions where ‘CAN’ is used.

**Ability Possibility Permission**

Important: - Can (कर सकते हैं) "Can" अंग्रेजी में सबसे अधिक इस्तेमाल की जाने वाली मोडल क्रियाओं में से एक है। इसका उपयोग क्षमता या अवसर को व्यक्त करने, अनुरोध करने या अनुमति देने और संभावना या असंभवता दिखाने के लिए किया जा सकता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Can** | **Ability Permission**  **Possibility** | she **can** dance.  You **can** go now.  It **can** be rain tomorrow. |

1. **Express Ability**

“Can”is used to show Capability, Ability, inability oropportunity. (Physically)

**For Example**

* I can play football.

मैं फुटबॉल खेल सकता हूं।

* Can you run fast?

क्यातुमतेज़दौड़सकतेहो।

* Rohit can ride a bike.

रोहितबाइकचलासकताहै।

* He can speak English.

वहअंग्रेजीबोलसकतेहैं।

* I can play table tennis.

मैंटेबलटेनिसखेलसकताहूं।

* They can eat with a spoon.

वेचम्मचसेखासकतेहैं।

* I can’t swim.

मैं तैर नहीं सकता।

* You can arrive at any time.

आप किसी भी समय आ सकते हैं।

* I cannot understand your language.

मैंतुम्हारीभाषानहींसमझसकता।

* She cannot cook food

वहखानानहींबनासकती।

1. **Express Possibility**

“Can”is use to express possibility or impossibility of any action.

“Can”also used to ask or offer help to someone.

**For Example**

* Can this be true?

क्यायहसचहोसकताहै?

* It cannot be so.

ऐसानहींहोसकता।

* It can get cold out there so take a jacket.

वहाँठंडीहोसकतीहैइसलिएएकजैकेटलेलो।

* I know you can win play cricket.

मुझेपताहैकिआपक्रिकेटखेलसकतेहैं।

* Well, I think your laptop can be repaired, but it's not going to be cheap.

अच्छा, मुझेलगताहैकिआपकेलैपटॉपकीमरम्मतकीजासकतीहै, लेकिनयहसस्तानहींहोनेवाला।

* You don't need to walk to school. I can take you there if you like.

आपकोस्कूलजानेकेलिएपैदलचलनेकीआवश्यकतानहींहै।अगरतुमचाहोतोमैंतुम्हेंवहाँलेजासकताहूँ।

* Can I carry your book for you?

क्यामैंतुंहारेलिएतुम्हारीकिताबलेजासकताहूं?

* Smoking can cause cancer.

धूम्रपानसेकैंसरहोसकताहै।

* It can get very hot in Rajasthan.

राजस्थानमेंबहुतगर्महोसकताहै।

* Sachin can speak three languages.

साचिनतीनभाषाएंबोलसकताहै।

* It can be rain today.

आज बारिश हो सकती है।

1. **Express Permission**

“Can”is also used to give permissions andMake a polite or an informal request.

**For Example**

* You can eat now.

अबआपखासकतेहैं।

* You can go now.

आप अब जा सकते हैं।

* Can you give me that book?

क्या आप मुझे वह पुस्तक दे सकते हैं?

* Can I go out tomorrow?

क्या मैं कल बाहर जा सकता हूँ?

* Can we swim in the pool?

क्या हम पूल में तैर सकते हैं?

* Can I use your phone please?

क्या मैं आपके फोन का उपयोग कर सकता हूं?

* They can live in my house?

वे मेरे घर में रह सकते हैं?

* You cannot see me?

आप मुझसे नहीं मिल सकते हैं?

* Can you solve this question?

क्या मैं आपके फोन का उपयोग कर सकता हू?

* Can you wait a moment?

क्या आप एक पल रुक सकते हैं?

* Can I sit on that sofa, please?

क्या मैं उस सोफे पर बैठ सकता हू?

* It can be rain today?

आज बारिश हो सकती है?

### Uses Of Could

Expressions where ‘Could’ is used.

**Ability In The Past Possibility Polite Permission**

Important:- Could(जब) का उपयोग“Can”के भूत काल के रूप में किया जा सकता है,यह उस क्षमता को संदर्भित करता है जो किसी व्यक्ति के पास आम तौर पर अतीत में थी या ऐसी चीज के लिए जो आम तौर पर अतीत मेंउसके लिए संभव थी।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Could** | **Ability In The Past Possibility**  **Polite Permission** | She could **play** snooker.  Ashish **could** become teacher.  You **Could** help me study english? |

1. **Ability In The Past**

“Could” is used as a past tense of “can”.

**For Example**

* Before I hurt my wrist, I could toss pizza dough.

अपनी कलाई को चोट पहुंचने से पहले, मैं पिज्जा टॉस कर सकता था।

* I couldn’t toss pizza dough.

मैं पिज्जाको टॉस नहीं कर सकता था।

* When I was younger I could run a mile.

जब मैं छोटा था तो मैं एक मील दौड़ सकता था।

* When I was a child I could climb trees.

जब मैं बच्चा था तब मैं पेड़ों पर चढ़ सकता था।

* Yesterday, I could not find my notebook.

कल, मुझे अपनी नोटबुक नहीं मिली।

* Till last year, He could not speak good English.

पिछले सालतक, वह अच्छी अंग्रेजी नहीं बोल सकता था।

* I could play the piano when I was a child.

जब मैं बच्चा था तो मैं पियानो बजा सकता था।

* She could not get a job at those days.

उन दिनों उसे नौकरी नहीं मिल सकती थी।

* She could not drive a car.

वह कार नहीं चला सकती थी।

* I could play cricket when I was younger.

जब मैं छोटा था तो क्रिकेट खेल सकता था।

1. **Possibility**

“Could” is used to represent the past possibility.

“Could” is also used in Narration.

**For Example**

* She could play the piano.

वह पियानो बजा सकती थी।

* He said that he could sing the song.

उन्होंने कहा कि वह गाना गा सकता था।

* Rajiv said that he could play the piano.

राजीव ने कहा कि वह पियानो बजा सकता था।

* A lot of crime could be prevented.

बहुत सारे अपराध को रोका जा सकते थे।

* I could win the game.

मैं गेम जीत सकता था।

* I could buy a car next week.

मैं अगले हफ्ते एक कार खरीद सकता था।

* I could drive you home.

मैं तुम्हें घर ले जा सकता था।

* I could not run fast.

मैं तेज नहीं भाग सकता था।

* The students could have turned it off.

छात्र इसे बंद कर सकते थे।

* He couldn’t have this house.

उसके पास यह घर नहींसकता हो था।

1. **Polite Permission**

“Could” is used to express request, suggestion, offer or a question in a very polite manner.

**For Example**

* Could I see your passport?

क्या मैं आपका पासपोर्ट देख सकता हूँ?

* Could you open the window?

क्या आप खिड़की खोल सकते हैं?

* Could you turn the music down?

क्या आप संगीत को बंद कर सकते हैं?

* Could I give you the lift?

क्या मैं आपको लिफ्ट दे सकता हूं?

* Could we go home now?

क्या अब हम घर जा सकते थे?

* Could you lend me this book?

क्या आप मुझे यह पुस्तक उधार दे सकते हैं?

* Could you tell me where the post office is?

क्या आप मुझे बता सकते हैं कि डाकघर कहाँ है?

* Could I take your pen, please?

क्या मैं आपकी कलम ले सकता हूं?

* Could I please use your washroom?

क्या मैं आपके वॉशरूम का उपयोग कर सकता हूं?

* Excuse me, could I just ask you something?

क्षमा करें, क्या मैं आपसे कुछ पूछ सकता हूं?

* Could we go to school now?

क्या अब हम स्कूल जा सकते थे?

**EXERCISE :- 1 (Can , Could)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“Can”,”can not”,”could”,”,“couldn't”)**

1. ………… I ask you something?
2. Rajat said I …………come as often as I liked.
3. Rohit ………… go to work yesterday because he was ill.
4. He ………… borrow my book, if she asked.
5. I ………… have married him, if I had wanted to.
6. ………… you lend me some rupess until tomorrow?
7. When I was a child, I ………… play whenever I wanted to.
8. ‘Where is mayank ?’ He ………… be in the ground.
9. It was a place where anything ………… happen.
10. I ………… understand anything he said.
11. You ………… get a better job if you speak English.
12. War ………… break out any day.
13. I  ………… go to the school because I was sick.
14. They  ………… go shopping that day because the store was closed.
15. Harshita   ………… ride a bicycle. She rides it to park every day.
16. I'm very tired, so I  ………… go out to the ground to play. I'm sorry.
17. When …………  I talk to you about the company report?
18. Most dinosaurs walked on land, but some  ………… fly or even swim.
19. Excuse me, I  ………… hear you right now. The music is too loud.
20. I  ………… drive a car when I was only eighteen years old.
21. Sachin hit the tree because he  ………… stop his bike. The brakes weren't working.
22. I  ………… read without my reading glasses. Where are they?
23. When I was young, I  ………… play the piano: it was too difficult for me!
24. Her grandmother was bilingual: she …………  speak both English and hindi.
25. Yesterday, parul ………… do that exercise alone. So, she called me for help.
26. In 1930, people  ………… use computers.
27. When his father was young, she …………  skate but he ………… do it any longer.
28. We  ………… open the window: it was locked from the inside!
29. In 1900, people  ………… watch TV.
30. Sourabh  …………  play chess and he was the best!
31. In 1945, people ………… play video games.
32. They …………  play chess!
33. Shubham   ………… play cricket last Monday: he had broken his arm!
34. When I was a teenager,i  ………… watch a horror film.
35. Last Sunday, we  …………  take any photos in the temple.

### Uses Of May

Expressions where ‘May’ is used.

**Permission Possibility Wishes/Blessing**

Important :- “May” (हो सकता है) काउपयोग वर्तमान और भविष्य में सभी व्यक्तियों के लिए किया जाता है।“May” काउपयोग अनुमति लेना या देना, संभावना व्यक्त करने, दुआ या प्राथना करने के लिया भी किया जाता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **May** | **Permission Possibility Wishes/Blessing** | **May** I come in sir?  It **may** be rain tommorow.  **May** god help you! |

1. **Permission**

“May” is used to ask or give: formal permission, formal Prohibition or polite request.

**For Example**

* Sir, May I ask you a question.

सर, मैं आपसे एक सवाल पूछसकता हूं।

* May I help you, sir?

क्यामैंआपकीमददकरसकताहूंसर?

* May I come in mam?

मैम, क्या मैं अंदर आ सकता हूँ

* You may buy something if you want?

यदितुमचाहेंतोकुछखरीदसकतेहो?

* May I borrow your book?

क्यामैंआपकीपुस्तकलेसकताहूँ?

* May I make a phone call?

क्या मैं फोन कर सकता हूँ?

* May we come a bit later?

क्याहमथोड़ी देरबादआसकतेहैं?

* You may go now.

अबतुमजासकतेहो।

* You may drink water.

आपपानीपीसकतेहैं।

* You may play now.

अबआपखेलसकतेहैं।

1. **Possibility**

“May” is used to make suggestions and to express chances of happening or not happening of any task.

**For Example**

* May be he is right?

हो सकता है कीवह सही हो?

He may come today?

वह आज आ सकता है?

* If you work hard, you may get good marks.

यदि आप कड़ी मेहनत करते हैं, तो आपको अच्छे अंक मिल सकते हैं।

* It may be rain today.

आज बारिश हो सकती है।

* Jatin may be upset but I can't really tell if he is annoyed or tired.

जतिन परेशान हो सकता हैपरमैं वास्तव में नहीं बता सकता कि वह नाराज है या थक गया है।

* You may submit your paper via email now.

अब आप अपना पेपर ईमेल के माध्यम से जमा कर सकते हैं।

Karan may not get upset, even if you tell him the truth.  
करण परेशान नहीं हो सकता, भले ही आप उसे सच बता दे।

* Arjun may get upset if you don't tell him the truth.

अगर आप अर्जुन सच नहीं बताते हैं तो वोपरेशान हो सकता है।

* When you finish, you may submit your paper via email.

जब आप पूरा कर लेंगे, तो आप अपना पेपर ईमेल के माध्यम से जमा कर सकते हैं।

* He may dance.

वह नृत्य कर सकता है।

1. **Wishes/Blessing**

“May” is used to give blessing as well as wishes in a very polite manner.

“May” can also be used to curse.

**For Example**

* May God bless you!

भगवान आपका भला करे!

* May you live long!

आप लंबे समय तक जियें!

* May his soul rest in peace!

उनकी आत्मा को शांति मिले!

* May you always have peace in your heart!

आपके दिल में हमेशा शांति बनीरहे!

* May you suffer for your misdeeds!

आप अपने दुष्कर्मों का पीड़ित भोगेगे!

* May God give you a fortune!

भगवान आपको सद्बुद्धि दे!

* May god ruin your business!

भगवान करे तूम्हाराव्यापार बरबाद हो जाए !

* May you be IAS!

आप IAS बन सकते हैं!

### Uses Of Might

Expressions where ‘Might’ is used.

**Possibility**

Important :- “Might”  का  प्रयोग  बहुत  कम  संभावना  व्यक्त  करने  वाले  वाक्यों

 के  साथ  किया  जाता  हैं . “Might”शब्द “May”के  भूतकाल  का  रूपमे भी उपयोग

किया जाता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Might** | **Possibility** | I **might** be a athlete. |

1. **Possibility**

“Might” is a past tense of “May”.

“Might” is also used to express chances of happening or not happening of any task.

**For Example**

* He said that he might go.

उन्होंने कहा कि वह जा सकते हैं।

* He blessed that, he might live long.

उन्होंने आशीर्वाद दिया कि, वह लंबे समय तक जियें!

* It might rain today.

आज बारिश हो सकती है।

* He might be a doctor.

वह डॉक्टर हो सकता है।

* He might be a writer.

वहएकलेखकहोसकताहै।

* She might have finished his homework.

उसने अपना होमवर्क पूरा कर लिया होगा।

* She might have gone his home.

वह अपने घर चली गई होगी।

* If he worked hard, he might get success.

अगर उन्होंने कड़ी मेहनत की, तो उसेसफलता मिल सकती है।

* If he had left his notebook there, somebody might have stolen that.

अगर उसने अपनी नोटबुक वहां छोड़ दी होती, तो हो सकता है कि कोई चोरी कर लेता।

* I wish I might have met Modi Ji.

काश मैं मोदी जी से मिलता।

**EXERCISE :- 2(May, Might)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“may”,”might”,”won’t”)**

1. I was just wondering whether you ………. be able to help me.
2. ………. God have mercy on your soul.
3. You ………. well be right.
4. I told them I ………. go if I felt like it, but wasn't sure.
5. Students ………. only borrow four books at a time.
6. The examiner says we ………. leave when we've finished.
7. It ………. be very expensive, but it's much better than the others.
8. I just ………. accept your offer.
9. You ………. try asking her for help- she knows her stuff.
10. You ­­………. have told me earlier!
11. You ………. have done the washing-up!
12. You ………. not drive a car if you are 14.
13. He does not know what to do; he ………. ask Wendy!
14. I ………. not go out for dinner tonight. I'm not feeling very well.
15. ………. this year bring you happiness and health!
16. He………. have gone out.
17. People ………. develop telepathy in the future(impossible)
18. He ………. have phoned while I was showering.
19. We ………. not visit Berlin on our holiday.
20. Stop eating sweets, you might get sick.
21. We ………. ever know everything(impossible)
22. It ………. be cloudy in June
23. It ………. rain in May
24. We ………. go to Paris next year.
25. She ………. have been sick last Monday.

### Uses Of Will

Expressions where ‘will’ is used.

**Promising Future action or habit**

Important :- हम भविष्य के बारे में बात करने के लिए “Will ”(इच्छा) का उपयोग कर सकते हैं। हम भविष्यवाणियों को बनाने, निर्णयों के बारे में बात करने और वादों, प्रस्तावों, अनुरोधों और धमकियों के लिए भी उपयोग करते हैं।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Will** | **Promising Future action or habit** | I **will** help you in reading this book.  We **will** go to the theater tonight. |

1. **Promising**

“Will” is used to promise, predict or in assumption.

“Will” is used to express desire, command, order or a decision.

**For Example**

* I will go home.

मे घर जाऊंगा।

* I will not go to school.

मैं स्कूल नहीं जाऊंगा।

* I will ensure that everything goes according to plan.

मैं यह सुनिश्चित करूंगा कि सब कुछ योजना के अनुसार हो।

* I will stop smoking.

मैं धूम्रपान करना बंद कर दूंगा।

* I will not disappoint you.

मै तुम्हे निराश नहीं करूँगा।

* I will marry you.

मैं तुमसे शादी करूँगा।

* I will help you with your project.

मैं आपके प्रोजेक्ट में आपकी मदद करूंगा।

* I will return your book tomorrow.

मैं कल तुम्हारी किताब लौटा दूंगा।

* Can somebody drive me to the station? - I will

क्या कोई मुझे स्टेशन तक ले जा सकता है?मैं जाउंगा

* We will not go to the movie tonight.

हम आज रात फिल्म देखने नहीं जाएंगे।

* I think it will rain tomorrow.

मुझे लगता है कि कल बारिश होगी।

* I will do my best next time.

मैं अगली बार अपना सर्वश्रेष्ठ प्रदर्शन करूंगा।

1. **Future Actionor Habit**

“Will” is used to give command, order or take decisions.

“Won’t” (will not) is used to ask if somebody is interested in doing something or not.

**For Example**

* I will deliver the money to your home.

मैं आपके घर पैसे पहुंचा दूंगा।

* I will definitely crack the UPSC exam this time.

मैं इस बार निश्चित रूप से यूपीएससी परीक्षा को क्रैक करूंगा।

* I will make him apologize again.

मैं उससे फिर माफी मांगूंगा।

* Boys will not wear the red color shirt.

लड़के लाल रंग की शर्ट नहीं पहनेंगे।

* Nobody will bring the mobile phone tothe examination hall.

कोई भी मोबाइल फोन परीक्षा हॉल में नहीं लाएगा।

* The girls at one place will not keep quiet.

एक जगह पर लड़कियां चुप नहीं बाथती।

* He will always talk big.

वह हमेशा बड़ी बात कर्ता है।

* She will wear a saree in the function.

वह फंक्शन में साड़ी पहनेंगी।

* Won’t you join us at dinner?   
  आप हमरे साथ रात के खाने में शामिल नहीं हो गे।
* Won’t you see my father?

क्या तुम मेरे पिता से मिलना नहीं चाहते?

* Won’t you have a cup of coffee?

क्या आप एक कप कॉफी नहीं पीएंगे?

* Will you stop him?

क्या आप उसे रोकेंगे?

* Will you stop making noise?

क्या आप शोर करनाबंद करेंगे?

* Will you please make me a cup of coffee?

क्या आप मुझे एक कप कॉफी पिलाएंगे?

### Uses Of Would

Expressions where ‘Would’ is used.

**Polite Request Show Intensions Chances Or Wish Conditional**

**Habits In Past**

Important :- Would (होगा)एक मोडल क्रिया है जो आमतौर पर संभावना, आवश्यकता और अनुमति जैसे विचारों को व्यक्त करने के लिए किसी अन्य क्रिया के साथ प्रयोग किया जाता है।Would का उपयोग“Will”के भूत काल के रूप में भी किया जाता है

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Would** | **Polite Request**  **Show Intensions Chances Or Wish Conditional**  **Habits In Past** | **Would**you please drop me to my home.  I **would** like to dance.  I **would** rather go home than party.  If you are in trouble,you **would**call me.  I **would**go to temple everyday. |

1. **Polite request**

“Would” is used to ask something very politely.

**For Example**

* Would you help me?

क्या आप मेरी मदद करेंगे?

* Would you lend me 1000rs?

क्या आप मुझे 1000 रुपये उधार देंगे?

* Would you drop me home?

क्या आप मुझे घर छोड़ देंगे?

* Would you fetch me that book, please?  
  क्या आप मुझे वह पुस्तक लाकर देंगे?
* Would you dance with me?

क्या तुम मेरे साथ नाचोगे?

* Would you please teach me?

क्या आप मुझे सिखाएंगे?

* Would you like to read his speech?

क्या आप उसका भाषण पढ़ना चाहेंगे?

* Would you play this game again?

क्या आप इस खेल को फिर से खेलेंगे?

* Would you like to drink water?

क्या आप पानी पीना पसंद करेंगे?

* Would you purchase me a dress?

क्या आप मुझे एक ड्रेस खरीदेंगे?

1. **Show Intension’s**

“Would” is also used to express what you like to do.

Subject + would like to + verb 1st form+ Object.

**For Example**

* I would like to meet you tomorrow.

मैं कल आपसे मिलना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to know your name.

मैं आपका नाम जानना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to watch a movie.

मैं एक फिल्म देखना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to play with you.

मैं आपके साथ खेलना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to play cricket.

मैं क्रिकेट खेलना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to eat.

मैं खाना पसंद करूँगा।

* I would like to drink water.

मैं पानी पीना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to travel to Delhi.

मैं दिल्ली की यात्रा करना चाहूंगा।

* I would like to ask you something.

मैं आपसे कुछ पूछना चाहूंगा।

1. **Choice or wish**

“Would” is also used express choice of reference using “rather”

Subject + would rather + verb 1st form +than

**For Example**

* He would rather die than beg.

वह भीख माँगने के बजाय मर जाएगा।

* I would rather read a book than watch a movie.

मैं एक फिल्म देखने के बजाय एक किताब पढ़ूंगा।

* I ****would**** rather not buy a house. I ****would**** like to rent an apartment instead.

मैं एक घर खरीदनाके बजाय एक अपार्टमेंट किराए पर लेना चाहूंगा।

* I ****would**** rather stay at home than go out tonight.

मैं आज रात बाहरजाने के बजाय घर पर रहूंगा।

* I would rather have seen it at the theater than on the laptop.

मैं इसे लैपटॉप पर नहीं बल्कि थिएटर में देखूंगा।

* She would rather have spent the money on a holiday.

बल्कि वह छुट्टी पर पैसे खर्च करता था।

* I would rather make a phone call than send an email.

मैं ईमेल भेजने के बजाय फ़ोन करना चाहूँगा।

* I would rather if you don’t mind.

यदि आप बुरा नहीं मानते तो मैं करूंगा।

* I don’t need a lift, thanks*.* I would rather walk.

मुझे लिफ्ट की जरूरत नहीं है, धन्यवाद। बल्कि मैं चलना चाहूँगा।

1. **Conditional sentence**

“Would” is also used in the sense of showing condition using “if”

**For Example**

* If you studied English, you would pass.

यदि आप अंग्रेजी पढ़ते, तो आप पास हो जाते।

* If the police had come a little before, the thief would not have run away.

अगर पुलिस थोड़ी पहले आ जाती, तो चोर भाग नहीं पाता।

* If I were in place of you, I would not say so.

अगर मैं आपकी जगह होता तो मैं ऐसा नहीं कहता।

* If the students had studied honestly, they would have succeeded.

यदि छात्रों ने ईमानदारी से अध्ययन किया होता, तो वे सफल होते।

* If I had known you had the day off, I would have asked you to join me.  
  अगरमुझेपताहोताकिआपकीछुट्टीहै, तोमैंआपसेजुड़नेकेलिएकहता।
* If it rains, you would rather get wet.

अगर बारिश होती है, तो आप गीला हो जाएगा।

* If she fell, she would hurt herself.

अगर वह गिरती, तो वह खुद को चोट पहुँचाती।

* If you had trained hard, you would have won the match.

अगर आपने कड़ी मेहनत से प्रशिक्षण लिया होता तो आप मैच जीत जाते।

* If you really loved me, you would buy me a gold necklace.

अगर तुम सच में मुझसे प्यार करते, तो तुम मुझसे सोने का हार खरीदते।

1. **Habits in the past**

“Would” is also used to show some past habits.

**For Example**

* I would have gone there.

मैं वहां चला जाताथा।

* You would have come to me.

तुम मेरे पास आ जातेथे।

* I would like to read a book every day.

मैं हर दिन एक किताब पढ़ना चाहूंगा।

* I would go to temple daily.

मैं रोज मंदिर जाताथा।

* When I was in Delhi I would sometimes take tea with breakfast.

जब मैं दिल्ली में होता तो कभी-कभी नाश्ते के साथ चाय लेताथा।

* Every Saturday I would go on a long bike ride.

हर शनिवार मैं लंबी बाइक की सवारी पर जाताथा।

* My teachers would always say “Sit down and shut up!”

मेरे शिक्षक हमेशा कहेंगे "बैठो और चुप रहो !"

* When I was little, I would play basketball with my friends

जब मैं छोटा था, मैं अपने दोस्तों के साथ बास्केटबॉल खेलता था।.

* When I was little, I would be happy playing the video game.

जब मैं छोटा था, मैं वीडियो गेम खेलकर खुश होताथा।

* I would like to play cricket every weekend.  
  मैं हर सप्ताहांत में क्रिकेट खेलना चाहूंगा।

**EXERCISE :- 3(Will, would)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“will”,”would”,”would’t”,”would rather”)**

1. I ........ accept your offer.
2. ........ you please be quiet?
3. It ........ be a great party.
4. **I** ........ **like to** go home now.
5. I ........ like to have more free time.
6. She ........ sit for hours listening to the radio.
7. I ........ probably go out tonight.
8. If I were you, I ........ study economics.
9. My brother was so angry that he ........  answer my phone calls for a week
10. I........ live in Cape Town than anywhere else.
11. ........ you like to see our holiday photos?
12. I ........pass my driving test.
13. Dad ........ **lend** me the car, so we had to take the train.
14. I ........ go to the cinema today.
15. **I**........ have the new one, not the old one.
16. I ........ do as you say.
17. I don't want another drink. **I** ........ go home.
18. ........ **you like** another drink?
19. We had a terrible night. The baby ........**go**to sleep.
20. The ship ........ take three hundred guests.
21. This bottle ........ hold two liters of wine.
22. I think I ........ enjoy a holiday in Scotland.
23. He ........ be talking all the time without doing anything.
24. ........ you mind giving me a lift if you could?
25. This machine ........ work well without giving you any trouble.
26. She ........ sit for hours talking to her.
27. I thought we **would be** late, so we ........ **have to take** the train.
28. ........ you give me your dictionary?
29. ........ you be kind enough to lend me your car?
30. ........ you come with me?

### 2.2.7 Uses Of Shall

Expressions where ‘shall’ is used.

**Permission or Suggestion**

Important :- "Shall” (करेगा) एक क्रियात्मक क्रिया है जिसका उपयोग भविष्य की कार्रवाई को इंगित करने के लिए किया जाता है। वादों या स्वैच्छिक कार्यों में भी “shall” अक्सर उपयोग किया जाता है। भविष्य की घटनाओं का वर्णन करने के लिए भी "Shall" का उपयोग अक्सर अनिवार्यता या पूर्वधारणा व्यक्त करता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Shall** | **Permission or Suggestion** | **Shall** I turn on the fan? |

“Shall” is used to ask or question: somebody’s intention, suggestion or offer.

**For Example**

* Shall I bring a glass of water for you?

क्यामैंआपकेलिएएकगिलासपानीलाऊं?

* Shall I keep this bag here?

क्यामैंइसबैगकोयहाँरखूँ?

* Shall I switch off the TV?

क्यामैंटीवीबंदकरदूं?

* Which pen shall I buy for her?

मैंउसकेलिएकौनसापेनखरीदूं?

* Where shall we go in the holidays?

हमछुट्टियोंमेंकहाँजाएंगे?

* Shall I come with you?

क्या मैंतुम्हारेसाथआऊँगा?

* Shall I ask her name?

क्यामैंउसकानामपूछूंगा?

* Shall I keep a seat for you in a class?

क्यामैंआपकेलिएक्लासमें सीट रखूं?

* Shall we turn on the AC?

क्याहमएसीचालूकरदे?

How shall I break the news?  
क्या मैं खबर बताऊं?

* Shall I shut the door?

क्यामैंदरवाजाबंदकरदूं?

* Shall we go for a drink?

क्याहमड्रिंककेलिएजाएंगे?

* Shall I drive?

मैंड्राइवकरूँगा?

* I shall be there to help you, so please don’t worry

मैंआपकीमददकरनेकेलिएवहाँरहूँगा, इसलिएकृपयाचिंतानकरें।.

### Uses Of Should

Expressions where ‘should’ is used.

**AdviceObligation Past Of Shall**

**Conditional Sentences Notice And Information**

Important :- “Should”(मुझे चाहिए)का उपयोग “Shall” के भूत काल के रूप में किया जाता है"Should" एक सामान्य क्रिया है जिसका उपयोग आमतौर पर सिफारिशें करने या सलाह देने के लिए किया जाता है। यह दायित्व के साथ-साथ दायित्व को व्यक्त करने के लिए भी इस्तेमाल किया जा सकता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Should** | **Advice**  **Obligation**  **Past Of Shall**  **Conditional Sentences** | You **should** study hard.  We **should** follow the rules.  I should have wake up early.  If I were you, I **should** have told the truth. |

* 1. **Advice**

“Should” is used to give or take advice.

**For Example**

* You should go home.

तुम्हें घर जाना चाहिये।

* You should read English.

आपको अंग्रेजी पढ़ना चाहिए।

She should come here.

उसे यहाँ आना चाहिए।

* you should go there.

तुम्हें वहाँ जाना चाहिए।

* What should I do?

मुझे क्या करना चाहिए?

* Should he buy a cake?

क्या उसे केक खरीदना चाहिए?

* You shouldn't throw garbage onto the street.

आपको सड़क पर कचरा नहीं फेंकना चाहिए।

* We shouldn't leave without having breakfast.

हमेंनाश्ताकिएबिनानहींजानाचाहिए।

* You should have read spoken book.

आपको स्पोकन बुक पढ़नी चाहिए थी।

* You should have learned English.

आपको अंग्रेजी सीखनी चाहिए थी।

* You should eat healthy to stay fit.

फिट रहने के लिए आपको हेल्दी खाना चाहिए।

* 1. **Past of shall**

“Should” is used as a past of “shall”.

“Should” is also used to give formal information or notice.

**For Example**

* He asked me if I should help him.

उसने मुझसे पूछा कि क्या मुझे उसकी मदद करनी चाहिए।

* If he should come. Ask him to wait for me.

अगर वह आया। तोउसे मेरे लिए इंतजार करने के लिए कहें।

* You should have seen it. It was really delightful.

आपको इसे देखना चाहिए था। यह वास्तव में आनंदमय था।

* We should have visited the doctor on the way.

हमें रास्ते में डॉक्टर से मिलना चाहिए था।

* You should rest at home today.

आपको आज ही घर पर आराम करना चाहिए।

* I should take a taxi this time.

मुझे इस बारटैक्सी लेनी चाहिएथी।

* He should be more thoughtful in the decision-making process.

उसे निर्णय लेने की प्रक्रिया में अधिक विचारशील होना चाहिए।

* You should have to watch the movie yesterday.

आपको कल फिल्म देखनी चाहिएथी।

* You should have danced at the party.

आपको पार्टी में डांस करना चाहिए था।

* 1. **Obligation**

“Should” is also used to express moral obligations or values.

**For Example**

* We should love our country.

हमें अपने देश से प्यार करना चाहिए।

* We should respect our elder’s.

हमें अपने बड़ोंका सम्मान करना चाहिए।

* We should not fight with others.

हमें दूसरों से नहीं लड़ना चाहिए।

* You should be wearing your seat belt.

आपको अपनी सीट बेल्ट पहननी चाहिए।

* I should be at work on time.

मुझे समय पर काम पर होना चाहिए।

* You should not drive so fast?

आपको इतनी तेज गाड़ी नहीं चलानी चाहिए?

* We should follow the traffic rules.

हमें यातायात नियमों का पालन करना चाहिए।

* You should follow the low.

आपको निम्न का पालन करना चाहिए।

* A solder should obey the orders.

एक सोल्डर को आदेशों का पालन करना चाहिए।

* A student should study hard.

एक छात्र को कठिन अध्ययन करना चाहिए।

* We should respect our prime minister.

हमें अपने प्रधानमंत्री का सम्मान करना चाहिए।

* Students should answer all the questions.

छात्रों को सभी सवालों के जवाब देने होंगे।

* Everybody should fill the form by tomorrow.

सबो कल तक फॉर्म भर लेनाचाहिए।

* Students should attend the Independence Day celebration.

छात्रों को स्वतंत्रता दिवस समारोह में शामिल लेना चाहिए।

* Students should volunteer for swatch Bharat Abhiyan.

छात्रों को स्वाच भारत अभियान मै भाड़ चढ़ के हिंसा लेना किया।

* Project’s should be submitted before the deadline.

प्रोजेक्ट को समाया सीमा से पहले जमा करना होगा।

* 1. **Conditional Sentences**

“Should” is also used in the sense of showing condition using “If”.

**For Example**

* If he should come, Ask him to wait for me.  
  अगर वह आए तो उसे मेरे लिए इंतजार करने के लिए कहना।
* If I lost my job I should have no money.

अगर मेरी नौकरी छूट गई तो मेरे पास पैसा नहीहोंगे।

* We should be grateful if you could send us some money.

अगर आप हमें थोड़े पैसेबजे तो हम आपके आभारी रहे गे।

* If I were you, I should not speak this.

अगर मै तुम्हारी झगहा होता तो मै ऐसे नहीं बोलता।

* If I were you, I shouldn't worry about frailer.

अगर मै तुम्हारी झगहा होता तो मै फ़ैलेर की चिंता ना करता।

* I shouldn't beat him if I were you.

अगर मैं तुम थे तो मुझे उसे नहीं पीटता।

* If you studied hard, you should have passed the test.

यदि आपने कठिन अध्ययन किया है, तो आपको परीक्षा पास कर लेते।

* If I were you, I should buy a car.

अगर मै तुम्हारी झगहा होता तो एक कार करोड़ लेता।.

* ****If he should**** ****call****, can you please answer right away?

अगर उसने फोन किया तो कृपया उसका फोन उठा लेना।

* If you love me, you should let me go!

यदि आप मुझसे प्यार करते हैं, तोतुमको मुझे जाने देना चाहिए!

**EXERCISE :- 4(Shall, should)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“shall”,”should”,”shouldn’t”)**

1. ........ I open the door?
2. Which pen ........I buy?
3. You ........ keep your promise.
4. You ........ smoke in bed.
5. I’m afraid I ........ not be able to attend the meeting.
6. ........ I wait for you? Tell me.
7. You ........ go to the opera in London. It’s great.
8. When ........ we know the result?
9. You ........tell her about it. It’s too depressing.
10. ........ we have breakfast now?
11. You ........ cross the street at red traffic lights.
12. ........ we go somewhere else?
13. ........ we tell him about our idea?
14. The doctor told him that he ........eat less. He’s too fat.
15. ........ we tell him about our idea?
16. ........ I carry this bag for you?
17. I think you ........ spend less money on clothes. They’re too expensive.
18. That’s a fantastic book. You ........ read it.
19. ........ I put the heating on?
20. He is often late to work. You........get up earlier.
21. She ........ tell lies.
22. ........ we tell him about our idea?
23. He’s fifteen. He........ drive a car.
24. I think I ........ make chicken for dinner tonight.
25. You ........ have been there to see what really happened.

### 2.2.9 Uses of Must

Expressions where ‘Must’ is used.

Compulsion Possibility

Important :-“Must”(अवश्य) का उपयोग दायित्व, संभावना व्यक्त करने, आदेश देने और सलाह देने के लिए किया जाता है। इसका उपयोग केवल वर्तमान और भविष्य के संदर्भ के लिए किया जा सकता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Must** | **Compulsion**  **Possibility** | Visitors **must** sign in at reception.  She **must** be the best athlete in our university. |

1. Compulsion

“Must” is used to express strong recommendation or duty.

**For Example**

* We must follow the low.

हमें निम्न का पालन अवश्य करना चाहिए।

* A soldier must obey the order.

एक सैनिक को आदेश का पालन अवश्य करना चाहिए।

* You must do your homework before going to a party.

किसी पार्टी में जाने से पहले आपको अपना होमवर्क अवश्य करना चाहिए।

* You must finish this work before Tuesday.

आपको यह काम मंगलवार से पहले पूरा अवश्य करना होगा।

* You must attend the ceremony.

आपको समारोह में अवश्य शामिल होना होगा।

* We must serve our country.

हमें अपनेदेशकी सेवाअवश्य करनी चाहिए।

* We must love our Youngers.

हमें अपने छोटा सेअवश्य प्यार करना चाहिए।

* We must get the umbrella before monsoon starts.

मानसून शुरू होने से पहले हमें छाताअवश्य खरीदनी चाहिए।

* You must get good grades.

आपको अवश्यही अच्छे ग्रेड मिलने चाहिए।

1. Possibility

“Must” is also used to express certainty.

**For Example**

* Living alone in the city must be difficult.

शहर में अकेले रहना मुश्किल होना चाहिए।

* She must be the best athlete in our school’s history.

वह हमारे स्कूल के इतिहास में सर्वश्रेष्ठ एथलीट होना चाहिए।

* He must be back in a week.

उसे एक हफ्ते में वापस आना होगा।

* That must be interesting.

यह दिलचस्प होना चाहिए।

* You must be dancing.

आप नाच रहे होंगे।

* She must be nearly 22.

उसकी उम्र लगभग 22 होनी चाहिए।

* He must be joking.

वह मजाक कर रहा होगा।

* He must be a hardworking employee.

वह एक मेहनती कर्मचारी होना चाहिए।

* She must have reached the temple by now.

वह अब तक मंदिर पहुँच चुकी होगी।

* It must have been past mid-day when I returned home.

जब मैं घर लौटा, तो मध्य-दिवस रहा होगा।

### Uses of Ought To

Expressions where ‘ought to’ is used.

Obligation Possibility

Important :- “Ought to” का इस्तमाल “should” की तरह होता है पर इसका इस्तेमाल बहुत काम किया जाता है।एक दायित्व या एक उम्मीद व्यक्त करने के लिएभी किया जाता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Ought To** | **Obligation**  **Possibility** | One **ought to** express follow traffic low.  When one studies hard, one **ought to** pass. |

1. Obligation

“Ought to” show a sense of moral responsibility, necessity or duty.

**For Example**

* We ought to love our country.

हमें अपने देश से प्यार करना चाहिए।

* We ought to respect our elder’s.

हमें अपने बुजुर्गों का सम्मान करना चाहिए।

* You ought to fight for your country.

आपको अपने देश के लिए लड़ना चाहिए।

* You ought not to fight with others.

आपको दूसरों से नहीं लड़ना चाहिए था।

* You ought to see a doctor at once!

आपको एक बार डॉक्टर को मिल लेना चाहिए!

* You ought to work hard.

आपको कड़ी मेहनत करनी चाहिए।

* You ought to be punctual.

आपको समय का पाबंद होना चाहिए।

* We ought to help the poor.

हमें गरीबों की मदद करनी चाहिए।

* You ought to visit your friends once in a while.

आपको एक बार अपने दोस्तों से मिलने लेना चाहिए।

* Rohit ought to go by herself.

रोहित को खुद से जाना चाहिए था।

* Nitin ought to be a bit nicer to you.

नितिन तुम्हारे प्रति थोड़ा आछा वहवर करता है।

1. Possibility

“Ought to” is also used to express certainty.

**For Example**

* This book ought to very use full.

इस पुस्तक को पूरा उपयोग करना चाहिए।

* When one studies hard, one ought to pass.

जब कोई कठिन अध्ययन करता है, तो उसे पास होना चाहिए।

* With all the studying she did, she ought to have passed her exam.

सभी अध्ययनों के साथ, उसने अपनी परीक्षा उत्तीर्ण की।

* With all the studying she’s done, she ought to pass her exam.

सभी अध्ययनों के साथ, उसने अपनी परीक्षा उत्तीर्ण की।

* You ought to have received the parcel by now.

आपको अब तक पार्सल प्राप्त हो जाना चाहिए था।

* You ought to receive a gift by tomorrow.

कल तक आपको उपहार मिलना चाहिए।

* We ought to be finished by this next week.

हमें अगले सप्ताह तक इसे पूरा कर लेना चाहिएथा।

* Nandini ought to get the promotion.

नंदिनी को प्रमोशन मिलना चाहिएथा।

* Ought we complete this work now?

क्या हमें अब यह काम पूरा कर लेना चाहिएथा?

EXERCISE :- 5(Must, ought to)

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“must”,”mustn’t”,”ought to”,”oughtn’t to”)**

1. You …….. stop smoking.)
2. I didn't know you were married ! You …….. have told me !
3. If they're out, they …….. have heard the news.
4. This pullover's got holes in it, I …….. get a new one.
5. He …….. be over eighty, he was born in 1930.
6. I can't find my laptop, I …….. have left it in the train.
7. I've got all the right answers, I …….. be one of the winners !
8. You …….. touch that plate, it's too hot.
9. That's awful ! You really …….. have done that, you know !
10. They …….. have gone to London.
11. He …….. take care of his children.
12. He …….. be punctual.
13. She …….. mend her ways.
14. You …….. apologize to her.
15. She …….. find a better job.
16. They …….. find a solution to the problem.
17. He …….. consult a doctor.
18. He …….. find a job.
19. They …….. follow the school’s policy, or they will get expelled.
20. According to this road sing, they …….. stop here.

### Uses of Had Better

Expressions where ‘Had Better ’ is used.

Recommendation

Important :- वर्तमान या भविष्य का उल्लेख करने के लिए “Had better” का इस्तमाल किया जाता है, उन कार्यों के बारे में बात करने के लिए जो हमें लगता है कि लोगों को करना चाहिए या जो एक विशिष्ट स्थिति में वांछनीय हैं।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Ought To** | **Recommendation** | You **had better** come in . It’s getting cold outside! |

“Had better” is used to give strong advice or worn somebody. (Impolite)

“Had better” is not always impolite, it could express a sense of urgency.

**For Example**

* You had better go. It’s getting late!

देर हो रही है अब तुम जानाचाहिए।

* You had better not go. The weather looks pretty nasty!

तुम अब नहीं जाना किया बहार मौसम ख़राब हो गया है ।

* You had better purchase an umbrella.

तुम छतरी ख़रीद लेनीचाहिए।

* He had better tell me everything.

उससे मुझे साब बता देना चाहिए।

* You had better go to school.

तुम स्कूल चले जानाचाहिए।

* You had better talking English.

तुम इंग्लिश मै बोलनाचाहिए।

* Your plane is leaving! You had better run.

तुम्हारा जहाज छूटने वाला है जल्दी घागो अब ।

* You had better not come here.

तुम्हारा जहाज छूटने वाला है जल्दी घागो अब ।

* You had better not eat fast food.

तुम देरी से नहीं आनाचाहिए।

* You had better finish the report.

तुम अपनी रिपोर्ट फिनिश करनीचाहिए।

### Uses of Need

Need is a semi-modal verb. It acts like a main verb as well as the main verb. We can use “Need” as a model verb only in interrogative or negative sentences.

NOTE: We don’t use the word “need” as a model verb much in daily use of spoken English we more often use them in writing.

Important :- “ Need”एक मोडल क्रिया के रूप में, “need” का उपयोग आमतौर पर नकारात्मक वाक्यों या सकारात्मक वाक्यों में किया जाता है। यह दायित्व या आवश्यकता के अभाव को व्यक्त करता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Need** | **Suggestion** | You **need**not hurry the I will reshedule the plane. |

**For Example**

* You need not worry.

आपको चिंता करने की जरूरत नहीं है।

* You need not talk to her.

आपको उससे बात करने की जरूरत नहीं है।

* Need I go there?

क्या मुझे वहां जाना चाहिए?

* Need we reserve seats?

क्या हमें सीटें आरक्षित करने की आवश्यकता है?

* She need not go there.

उसे वहां जाने की जरूरत नहीं है।

* You need not take off your shoes.

आपको अपने जूते उतारने की जरूरत नहीं है।

* I need not to go there?  
  मुझेवहांजानेकीआवश्यकतानहींहै?
* She need not wait for me.

उसे मेरी प्रतीक्षा नहीं करनी चाहिए।

* You need not interfere with my work.

आपको मेरे काम में दखल देने की जरूरत नहीं है।

* You need not ask anyone.

आपको किसी से पूछने की जरूरत नहीं है।

### Uses of Dare

Dare is also a semi modal verbs like “need” dare act like both main verb and model verbs.

We can use “Dare” as a model verb only in interrogative or negative sentences.

NOTE: We don’t use the word “dare” as a model verb much in daily use of spoken English we more often use them in writing.

Important :- एक मोडल क्रिया के रूप में, Dare (हिम्मत) का उपयोग नकारात्मक और पूछताछ के वाक्यों में किया जाता है।

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Modal verb** | **Uses** | **Example** |
| **Dare** | **Warning** | You **dare** not tell me lie. |

**For Example**

* Dare you go here alone.

यहाँ अकेले आने की हिमत मत करना।

* I dare not to go there alone.

मुजमे वह अकेले जाने की हिमत नहीं है ।

* She dare not speak the truth.

उसने सच बोलने की हिम्मत नहीं की।

* I dare not touch her.

मैंने उसे छूने की हिम्मत नहीं की।

* How dare you?

तुम्हारी हिम्मत कैसे हुई?

* How dare he say so to you?

तुमने उसे ऐसा कहने की हिम्मत कैसे की।

* I dare not take such a step.

मैंने ऐसा कोई कदम उठाने की हिम्मत नहीं की।

**EXERCISE :- 6(Had Better, Need, Dare)**

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct option**

**(“dare”,”need ”,”needn’t”,”had better”)**

1. Raj  did not …….. to accept the challenge.
2. you …….. you to do it.
3. you …….. not be late again or you’ll lose your job.
4. You …….. get some rest.
5. Rohit …….. not do such a thing.
6. Do I …….. to wait any longer?
7. You …….. consult a doctor.
8. How …….. you contradict me?
9. The party going to start soon, we …….. leave soon or we’ll miss it.
10. …….. we talk to her about this?
11. You ……..  come early.
12. I ……..  tell you
13. He …….. be careful.
14. Dad said he'd punish you he caught you smoking again. You …….. not do it again.
15. …….. we reserve seats on the train?
16. I …….. not spend a lot of time watching television.
17. Rajat  …….. not apologize because it’s not his fault.
18. He …….. not accept the challenge.
19. …….. he say that to you?
20. How …….. he do such a thing?

* Model verb table

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Modal verb | Uses | Example |
| Can | Ability Permission  Possibility | she **can** play the guitar.  Their parents say they **can** have a party.  It **can** be rain tomorrow. |
| Could | Ability In The Past Possibility  Polite Permission | Before I hurt my wrist, I **could** toss omlet.  Harshita **could** become mayor.  **Could** you phone me when you are free? |
| May | Permission Possibility Wishes/Blessing | You **may** submit your poject via email now.  The bakery **may** be open now.  **May** god bless you! |
| Might | Possibility | My cat **might** be the one who made the mess. |
| Will | Promising Future action or habit | I **will** help you learn English.  We **will** go to the party tonight. |
| Would | Polite Request  Show Intensions Chances Or Wish Conditional  Habits In Past | **Would** you please give me your book.  I **would** like to eat pizza.  I **would** rather study than playing video game.  If I were in trouble, I **would** ask you for help.  I **would** go to gym everyday. |
| Shall | Permission or Suggestion | I **shall not** let you down. |
| Should | Advice  Obligation  Past Of Shall  Conditional Sentences | For strong bones, you **should** drink milk.  We **should** respect our elders.  You **should** not let me down.  She **should** be at the bustop right now. |
| Must | Compulsion  Possibility | Visitors **must** sign in at reception.  She **must** be the best athlete in our school. |
| Ought To | Obligation  Possibility | One **ought to** express one’s gratitude.  When one studies hard, one **ought to** pass. |
| Had Better | Recommendation | You **had better** go. It’s getting late! |
| Need | Suggestion | You **need** not worry. |
| Dare | Warning | You **dare** not tolk to her. |

* Answers of model verb exercise :-

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 1 (Can, Could) | | | |
| 1. Can / Could 2. I could 3. could not 4. could 5. could 6. Can / Could 7. I could 8. could 9. could | 1. not 2. can 3. can /could 4. couldn't 5. couldn't 6. can 7. can't 8. can 9. could | 1. I  can't 2. I  could 3. couldn't 4. I  can't 5. couldn't 6. she could 7. couldn't 8. couldn't 9. could  can't | 1. couldn't 2. couldn't 3. could 4. could couldn't 5. could 6. couldn't 7. couldn't 8. couldn't |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 2 (May, Might) | | | |
| 1. might 2. may 3. may 4. might 5. may 6. may 7. may | 1. might 2. might 3. might 4. might 5. may 6. might | 1. May 2. May 3. May 4. Won’t 5. May 6. May | 1. might 2. won’t 3. may 4. might 5. may 6. might |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 3 (Will, Would) | | | |
| 1. Will 2. Will 3. Will 4. **Would rather** 5. **would** 6. Will 7. Will | 1. Would 2. wouldn't 3. **would rather** 4. **would** 5. Will 6. Wouldn’t 7. would rather /will | 1. would rather 2. will 3. would rather 4. would 5. wouldn’t 6. will 7. will 8. would | 1. will 2. would 3. will 4. would 5. would 6. will 7. will 8. will |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 4 (Shall, Should) | | | |
| 1. Shall 2. Shall/should 3. Should 4. Shouldn’t 5. Shall 6. Shall 7. Should | 1. Shall 2. Shouldn’t 3. Shall 4. Shouldn’t 5. Shall 6. Should 7. Should | 1. should 2. shall 3. should 4. should 5. shall 6. should 7. shouldn’t | 1. should 2. shouldn’t 3. should 4. should |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 5(Must, Ought To) | | | |
| 1. ought to 2. ought to 3. mustn’t 4. ought to 5. must | 1. must 2. must 3. mustn’t 4. oughtn’t to 5. must | 1. must 2. ought to 3. must 4. must 5. ought to | 1. must 2. ought to 3. must 4. ought to 5. ought to |

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Exercise:- 6 (Had Better, Need, Dare) | | | |
| 1. Dare 2. Dares 3. Had better 4. Had better 5. dare | 1. need 2. had better 3. dare 4. had better 5. need | 1. needn’t 2. needn’t 3. had better 4. had better 5. need | 1. need 2. need 3. dare 4. dare 5. dare |

## Passive voice

## Conditional Sentences .. pn 292

## Complex Sentences (Chapter 24- Page 295)

### Noun Clause

### Adjective Clause

### Adverb Clause

## Compound Sentences (Either or/Neither Nor/ Otherwise/Not only/but also/as well as)

Definitions

Use Cases

Practice

## Direct and indirect speech

## Let/Let’s go / Do this

Let it be

Will let you know

मुझेबोलनेदो

- Allow me to speak / Let me speak

मुझेनाचनेदो

- Allow me to dance / Let me dance.

हमारेअध्यापकहमेंखेलनेनहींदेते

- Our teachers do not let us play

मैंउसकोअपनीसाइकिलचलानेदेतीहँ

- I let him ride my bicycle (said by a female)

उसनेमुझेशब्दकोशख़रीदनेदिया

- She let me buy a dictionary

संगीतानेरोहितकोगाड़ीचलानेदी

- Sangeeta let Rohit drive the car

क्यातुमरविकोबियरपीनेदोगे?

- Will you let Ravi drink beer?

वहउसकोगिटारबजानेदेगा

- He will let her play guitar.

Let me read the book.

Shalini lets me live here.

My Father let me watch TV.

Will you let me come?

वहउसकोसिगरेटपीनेनहींदेती

रहनेदो!

## Causative Verbs (Get & Make)

What is this -> This is a pen.

## Use to/ Used to

## Have to/Had to

## Use of about to

I am about to leave

I was about to ring you

## Fond of /Like /Love to do /Suppose to

## Use of Ever / Never

## Use of Dare and need

I need to do this

I need to speak truth

Dare you to speak truth

I need to talk to her

How dare you to talk to her

How Dare you to go there

How dare you to stop me

How dare you to interrupt me

## Use of Getting/Get it done

होरही

the act of acquiring something automatically

Jab Kisi Vastu ki dasha mai parivertan .. apne app hota hai to aaise vako mai geeting ka use kerte hai

I am not getting you

Tae is getting cold

Mango is getting rotten

I am getting young

I m getting old

You are geeting to studious now a daya – padaku

He is getting honest

He is getting to naïve – bhola

I am not geeting you

## Should have/ Could have/Would have/May have/Must have/might have

Could have done this

I wish I could have done this

## Add from pn 186 onwards from Grammer Book no 1

## If conditional sentences- blog wala

If I were you

## Special use of Interrogative Words

What -> At what time -> So what

When

How

How come - kaise

How many -> How many time

How much -> How much time

How often

HOW DID YOU FIND

HOW TO <SOME ACTION> -> I know how to Swim

Where

How many

Whom

With whom

FROM WHERE

## Idioms and Phrases

Get Rid of

Short tempered

# Daily Conversation

<http://mebad-englishspeakingcourse.blogspot.in/p/hindi-meanings-english-translation.html>

Questions asked from Sheetal – refer notes from Pinki

# Conversation &Group Discussion/Debate

Joint family Vs Nuclear family

# Presentation -> Hesitation Removal

# Audio Video Listing

# News Paper and Magazines reading & understanding

# Email/Letter/Application & Essay Writing

Refer exercise of New Light .. pn 360

# Accent neutralization & making

American

British

Others

# Public Speaking Skills

# Personality Development& Confidence Building

# Interview Skill & Preparations-> Mock Interviews

# Important Abbreviations

**I.e.** and **e.g.** are both Latin abbreviations. **E.g.** stands for exempli gratia and **means** “for **Example**.” **I.e.** is the abbreviation for id est and **means** “in other words.”